

**FORD TOURNEO CONNECT /  
TRANSIT CONNECT Owner's Manual**





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3750en 202101 20210107154136



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

|                                        |    |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| About This Manual .....                | 7  |
| Symbols Glossary .....                 | 7  |
| REACH .....                            | 9  |
| Replacement Parts Recommendation ..... | 9  |
| Special Notices .....                  | 10 |
| Mobile Communications Equipment .....  | 10 |

## Data Privacy

|                                                        |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Data Privacy .....                                     | 11 |
| Service Data .....                                     | 12 |
| Event Data .....                                       | 12 |
| Settings Data .....                                    | 13 |
| Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With:<br>Modem ..... | 13 |
| Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With:<br>SYNC 3 .....    | 13 |
| Emergency Call System Data .....                       | 14 |

## Environment

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Protecting the Environment ..... | 15 |
|----------------------------------|----|

## At a Glance

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| Instrument Panel - LHD ..... | 16 |
| Instrument Panel - RHD ..... | 17 |

## Child Safety

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Installing Child Restraints ..... | 19 |
| Child Restraint Positioning ..... | 23 |
| Child Safety Locks .....          | 27 |

## Seatbelts

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Fastening the Seatbelts .....    | 28 |
| Seatbelt Height Adjustment ..... | 28 |
| Seatbelt Reminder .....          | 29 |

## Supplementary Restraints System

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Principle of Operation .....                    | 31 |
| Driver Airbag .....                             | 31 |
| Passenger Airbag .....                          | 32 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off ..... | 32 |
| Side Airbags .....                              | 33 |
| Side Curtain Airbags .....                      | 34 |

## Automatic Crash Notification System

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| Emergency Assistance ..... | 35 |
|----------------------------|----|

## Keys and Remote Controls

|                                                                              |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| General Information on Radio<br>Frequencies .....                            | 38 |
| Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless<br>Entry and Push Button Start ..... | 38 |
| Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote<br>Flip Key .....                     | 41 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....                                 | 43 |
| Passive Key Backup Position .....                                            | 43 |
| Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles<br>With: Passenger Double Seat .....  | 43 |

## MyKey™

|                                                                        |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Principle of Operation .....                                           | 45 |
| MyKey Settings .....                                                   | 45 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without:<br>Push Button Start .....        | 46 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push<br>Button Start .....           | 46 |
| Programming a MyKey .....                                              | 47 |
| Clearing All MyKeys .....                                              | 49 |
| Checking MyKey System Status .....                                     | 50 |
| Using MyKey With Remote Start<br>Systems .....                         | 51 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles<br>Without: Push Button Start ..... | 51 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                                                  |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start ..... | 51 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----|

## Doors and Locks

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Locking and Unlocking ..... | 53 |
| Sliding Door .....          | 56 |
| Keyless Entry .....         | 56 |

## Liftgate

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Manual Liftgate ..... | 59 |
|-----------------------|----|

## Security

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Passive Anti-Theft System ..... | 60 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm .....          | 60 |

## Steering Wheel

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel ..... | 62 |
|------------------------------------|----|

## Wipers and Washers

|                                     |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| Windshield Wipers .....             | 63 |
| Autowipers .....                    | 63 |
| Windshield Washers .....            | 65 |
| Rear Window Wiper and Washers ..... | 65 |

## Lighting

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| General Information .....         | 66 |
| Lighting Control .....            | 66 |
| Autolamps .....                   | 67 |
| Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....  | 68 |
| Headlamp Exit Delay .....         | 68 |
| Automatic High Beam Control ..... | 68 |
| Front Fog Lamps .....             | 70 |
| Rear Fog Lamps .....              | 70 |
| Headlamp Leveling .....           | 71 |
| Cornering Lamps .....             | 71 |
| Direction Indicators .....        | 72 |
| Interior Lamps .....              | 72 |

## Windows and Mirrors

|                                                                        |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Power Windows - Vehicles With: Rear Power Windows .....                | 74 |
| Power Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open Driver Window .....      | 75 |
| Global Opening and Closing .....                                       | 75 |
| Exterior Mirrors .....                                                 | 76 |
| Interior Mirror - Vehicles Without: Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror ..... | 76 |
| Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....    | 76 |
| Sun Shades .....                                                       | 77 |

## Instrument Cluster

|                                                                |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Gauges .....                                                   | 79 |
| Warning Lamps and Indicators .....                             | 80 |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators - Manual Transmission .....    | 83 |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators - Automatic Transmission ..... | 83 |

## Information Displays

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| General Information .....   | 84 |
| Trip Computer .....         | 86 |
| Personalized Settings ..... | 86 |
| Information Messages .....  | 86 |

## Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| What Is Remote Start .....                       | 99 |
| Remote Start Limitations .....                   | 99 |
| Enabling Remote Start .....                      | 99 |
| Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle ..... | 99 |
| Remote Start Settings .....                      | 99 |

## Climate Control

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Manual Climate Control .....    | 101 |
| Automatic Climate Control ..... | 102 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                                                                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate<br>- Vehicles With: Automatic<br>Temperature Control ..... | 103 |
| Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate<br>- Vehicles With: Manual Temperature<br>Control .....    | 104 |
| Rear Passenger Climate Controls .....                                                                | 105 |
| Heated Windshield .....                                                                              | 105 |
| Heated Rear Window .....                                                                             | 105 |
| Heated Exterior Mirrors .....                                                                        | 106 |
| Auxiliary Heater .....                                                                               | 106 |

## Seats

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Sitting in the Correct Position ..... | 110 |
| Head Restraints .....                 | 110 |
| Manual Seats .....                    | 112 |
| Rear Seats - Short Wheelbase .....    | 116 |
| Rear Seats - Long Wheelbase .....     | 117 |
| Heated Seats .....                    | 120 |

## Rear Occupant Alert System

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What is the Rear Occupant Alert System<br>.....          | 121 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert<br>System Work .....    | 121 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions<br>.....          | 121 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations<br>.....          | 121 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System<br>On and Off ..... | 121 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators<br>.....           | 122 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Audible<br>Warnings .....     | 122 |

## Auxiliary Power Points

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Auxiliary Power Points .....     | 123 |
| Cigar Lighter .....              | 124 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger ..... | 124 |

## Storage Compartments

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cup Holders .....                             | 126 |
| Overhead Console .....                        | 126 |
| Folding Tray .....                            | 126 |
| Under Seat Storage .....                      | 126 |
| Instrument Panel Storage Compartment<br>..... | 127 |
| Device Holder .....                           | 127 |

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

|                                                                    |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....                                          | 128 |
| Ignition Switch .....                                              | 128 |
| Push Button Ignition Switch .....                                  | 129 |
| Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without:<br>Push Button Start ..... | 131 |
| Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:<br>Push Button Start .....    | 132 |
| Starting a Gasoline Engine .....                                   | 132 |
| Starting a Diesel Engine - Automatic<br>Transmission .....         | 135 |
| Starting a Diesel Engine - Manual<br>Transmission .....            | 137 |
| Switching Off the Engine .....                                     | 139 |
| Engine Block Heater .....                                          | 139 |

## Unique Driving Characteristics

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission<br>.....    | 141 |
| Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic<br>Transmission ..... | 142 |
| EcoSelect .....                                   | 144 |

## Fuel and Refueling

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Safety Precautions .....          | 145 |
| Fuel Quality - E85 .....          | 145 |
| Fuel Quality - Gasoline .....     | 146 |
| Fuel Quality - Diesel .....       | 147 |
| Fuel Filler Funnel Location ..... | 147 |
| Running Out of Fuel .....         | 147 |

# Table of Contents

---

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Refueling .....        | 149 |
| Fuel Consumption ..... | 152 |

## Engine Emission Control

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Catalytic Converter - Gasoline .....       | 153 |
| Selective Catalytic Reductant System ..... | 153 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter .....          | 158 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter .....            | 159 |

## Transmission

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Manual Transmission .....    | 165 |
| Automatic Transmission ..... | 165 |

## Brakes

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....                    | 168 |
| Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes ..... | 168 |
| Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....    | 168 |
| Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission ..... | 169 |
| Hill Start Assist .....                      | 169 |

## Traction Control

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Principle of Operation ..... | 171 |
| Using Traction Control ..... | 171 |

## Stability Control

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Principle of Operation .....  | 172 |
| Using Stability Control ..... | 173 |

## Parking Aids

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Principle of Operation ..... | 174 |
| Rear Parking Aid .....       | 174 |
| Front Parking Aid .....      | 176 |
| Side Sensing System .....    | 178 |
| Active Park Assist .....     | 180 |
| Rear View Camera .....       | 187 |

## Cruise Control

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Principle of Operation .....        | 190 |
| Using Cruise Control .....          | 190 |
| Using Adaptive Cruise Control ..... | 191 |

## Driving Aids

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Speed Limiter .....                 | 197 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter .....     | 198 |
| Driver Alert .....                  | 199 |
| Lane Keeping System .....           | 201 |
| Blind Spot Information System ..... | 204 |
| Cross Traffic Alert .....           | 206 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition .....      | 209 |
| Speed Sign Recognition .....        | 211 |
| Eco .....                           | 212 |
| Pre-Collision Assist .....          | 213 |

## Local Hazard Information

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is Local Hazard Information .....         | 219 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions .....     | 219 |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information .....        | 219 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status ..... | 219 |

## Load Carrying

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....          | 220 |
| Luggage Anchor Points .....        | 220 |
| Rear Under Floor Storage .....     | 221 |
| Cargo Nets .....                   | 221 |
| Roof Racks and Load Carriers ..... | 223 |
| Folding Bulkhead .....             | 224 |

## Towing

|                                                               |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing a Trailer .....                                        | 227 |
| Trailer Sway Control .....                                    | 228 |
| Tow Ball .....                                                | 228 |
| Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission ..... | 231 |



# Table of Contents

---

|                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels -<br>Automatic Transmission ..... | 232 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

## Driving Hints

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Cold Weather Precautions .....      | 234 |
| Breaking-In .....                   | 234 |
| Driving Economically .....          | 234 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water ..... | 234 |
| Floor Mats .....                    | 235 |

## Roadside Emergencies

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Hazard Flashers .....           | 236 |
| First Aid Kit .....             | 236 |
| Warning Triangle .....          | 236 |
| Fuel Shutoff .....              | 236 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle ..... | 237 |
| Towing Points .....             | 239 |

## Fuses

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Fuse Box Locations .....       | 241 |
| Fuse Specification Chart ..... | 242 |
| Changing a Fuse .....          | 247 |

## Maintenance

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....                        | 249 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood .....               | 249 |
| Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™<br>.....    | 251 |
| Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue,<br>LHD ..... | 252 |
| Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue,<br>RHD ..... | 253 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™<br>.....    | 254 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBlue .....         | 254 |
| Engine Oil Check .....                           | 254 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline .....              | 255 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel .....                | 255 |
| Engine Coolant Check .....                       | 255 |
| Brake Fluid Check .....                          | 256 |

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Clutch Fluid Check - Manual<br>Transmission .....                         | 257 |
| Changing the 12V Battery .....                                            | 257 |
| Washer Fluid Check .....                                                  | 257 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades .....                                           | 257 |
| Changing the Front Wiper Blades .....                                     | 257 |
| Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -<br>Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors ..... | 258 |
| Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -<br>Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate .....  | 259 |
| Changing a Bulb .....                                                     | 260 |

## Vehicle Care

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning the Exterior .....        | 265 |
| Cleaning the Interior .....        | 266 |
| Repairing Minor Paint Damage ..... | 268 |
| Waxing Your Vehicle .....          | 268 |

## Wheels and Tires

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....           | 269 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit ..... | 269 |
| Tire Care .....                     | 273 |
| Using Winter Tires .....            | 274 |
| Using Snow Chains .....             | 274 |
| Changing a Road Wheel .....         | 275 |
| Tire Pressures .....                | 280 |
| Tire Pressures .....                | 281 |
| Tire Pressures .....                | 282 |
| Tire Pressures .....                | 284 |
| Lug Nuts .....                      | 286 |

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring<br>System ..... | 287 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System<br>Precautions ..... | 287 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System<br>Limitations ..... | 287 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures .....                     | 287 |

# Table of Contents

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....         | 288 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting ..... | 288 |

## Capacities and Specifications

|                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Dimensions – Long Wheelbase Com Kombi .....                              | 290 |
| Vehicle Dimensions – Long Wheelbase Double Cab in Van/Long Wheelbase Van .....   | 290 |
| Vehicle Dimensions – Long Wheelbase Kombi .....                                  | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions – Short Wheelbase Com Kombi .....                             | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions – Short Wheelbase Double Cab in Van/Short Wheelbase Van ..... | 292 |
| Vehicle Dimensions – Short Wheelbase Kombi .....                                 | 292 |
| Towbar Dimensions .....                                                          | 293 |
| Vehicle Identification Plate .....                                               | 294 |
| Vehicle Identification Number .....                                              | 295 |
| Capacities and Specifications – 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....                             | 295 |
| Capacities and Specifications – 1.5L EcoBlue .....                               | 298 |
| Bulb Specification Chart .....                                                   | 300 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures .....                                                   | 302 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures – 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....                                  | 302 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures – 1.5L EcoBlue .....                                    | 303 |

## Connected Vehicle

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is a Connected Vehicle .....                | 304 |
| Connected Vehicle Requirements .....             | 304 |
| Connected Vehicle Limitations .....              | 304 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network ..... | 304 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....  | 305 |

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Vehicles With: Modem .....  | 305 |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Vehicles With: SYNC 3 ..... | 306 |

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....                    | 308 |
| Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password ..... | 308 |

## Audio System

|                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Audio Unit – Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....                            | 309 |
| Audio Unit – Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 .....                         | 310 |
| Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays – Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 ..... | 312 |
| Connecting a Bluetooth® Device – Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 .....     | 312 |
| Streaming Bluetooth Audio – Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 .....          | 312 |
| Playing Media From a USB Device – Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 .....    | 312 |
| USB Port .....                                                      | 313 |
| Using Voice Recognition .....                                       | 313 |

## SYNC™ 3

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| General Information .....     | 314 |
| Using Voice Recognition ..... | 316 |
| Entertainment .....           | 322 |
| Climate .....                 | 324 |
| Phone .....                   | 327 |
| Navigation .....              | 329 |
| Apps .....                    | 333 |
| Settings .....                | 334 |
| SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting ..... | 336 |

## Appendices

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Electromagnetic Compatibility ..... | 346 |
| End User License Agreement .....    | 349 |
| Declaration of Conformity .....     | 373 |

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

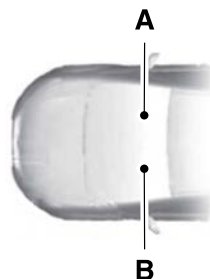
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.

# Introduction



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.

# Introduction



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

## REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

# Introduction

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at [www.etis.ford.com/BEMM](http://www.etis.ford.com/BEMM).

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this manual was correct at the time of publication, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

**Note:** We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.



## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 334).

### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

### Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network

service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 304).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 333).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

# Data Privacy

---

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 334).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services

operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

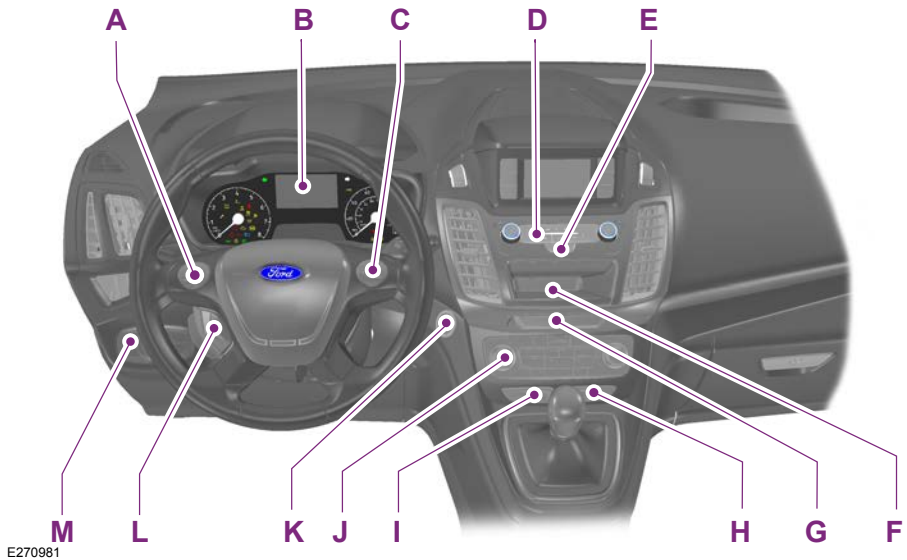
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD

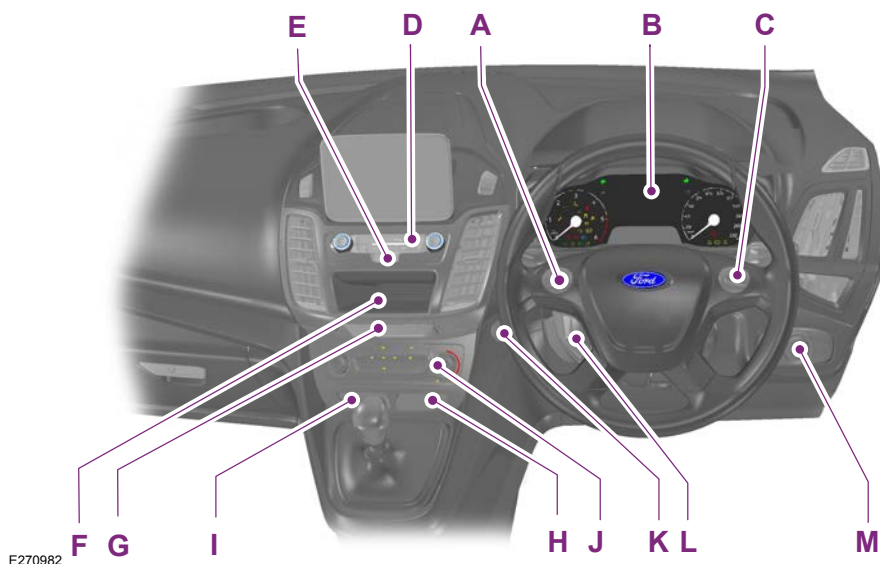


- A Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 84).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 79).
- C Audio and voice control buttons.
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 309).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 236).
- F Wireless accessory charging. See **Wireless Accessory Charger** (page 124).
- G Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 32).
- H Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 141). Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 174).
- I Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 171). EcoSelect button. See **EcoSelect** (page 144).
- J Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 101).
- K Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## At a Glance

- L Cruise control buttons. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 190).
- M Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 66).

### INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



- A Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 84).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 79).
- C Audio and voice control buttons.
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 309).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 236).
- F Wireless accessory charging. See **Wireless Accessory Charger** (page 124).
- G Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 32).
- H Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 141). Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 174).

## At a Glance

---

- I Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 171). EcoSelect button. See **EcoSelect** (page 144).
- J Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 101).
- K Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).
- L Cruise control buttons. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 190).
- M Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 66).

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



E161855



E68916

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

# Child Safety

## Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

### Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

### Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

## Booster Seats

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.



# Child Safety

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

## Booster Cushion (Group 3)



**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

## ISOFIX Anchor Points



**WARNING:** Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



E174928

The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the second row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

**Note:** If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 23).

# Child Safety

## Top Tether Anchor Points

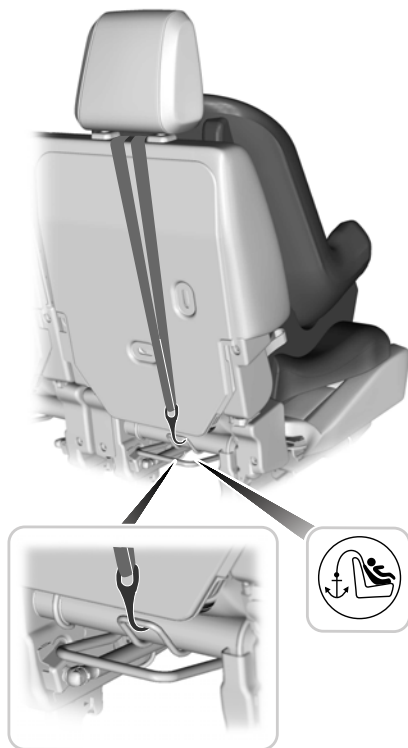


**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation.

**Note:** You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation.



E165605

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the underside or back of the second row seats.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



2. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.



**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

# Child Safety

| Seating positions                                     | Mass group categories |                      |                         |                          |                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                                       | 0                     | 0+                   | 1                       | 2                        | 3                        |
|                                                       | Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)  | Up to 29 lbs (13 kg) | 20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg) | 33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg) | 46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg) |
| Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>            | X                     | X                    | UF <sup>1</sup>         | UF <sup>1</sup>          | UF <sup>1</sup>          |
| Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>           | U <sup>1</sup>        | U <sup>1</sup>       | U <sup>1</sup>          | U <sup>1</sup>           | U <sup>1</sup>           |
| Fold-flat front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>  | X                     | X                    | L <sup>1</sup>          | L <sup>1</sup>           | L <sup>1</sup>           |
| Fold-flat front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b> | X                     | L <sup>1</sup>       | L <sup>1</sup>          | L <sup>1</sup>           | L <sup>1</sup>           |
| Dual front passenger seat - center seat only          | X                     | X                    | X                       | X                        | X                        |
| Second row rear seats                                 | U                     | U                    | U                       | U                        | U                        |
| Third row rear seats                                  | U                     | U                    | U                       | U                        | U                        |

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**U<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

**UF<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

**L<sup>1</sup>** Suitable only for the following child seats:

- Group 0+: Britax Baby-Safe Plus (E1-04301146) also with Britax Baby-Safe Belted Base (E1-04301146). Maxi-Cosi CabrioFix (E4-04443517) also with EasyBase 2 (E4-04443523) or EasyFix (E4-04443522).
- Group 1: Recaro Young Expert (E1-04301150). Britax Duo Plus (belted) (E1-04301133). Britax Safefix (belted) (E1-04301199).
- Group 2 and 3: Britax Kidfix (belted only) (E1-04301198). Britax Kid (E1-04301148).
- We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Child Seats

| Seating positions                    |            | Mass group categories |                       |                               |
|--------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                      |            | 0                     | 0+                    | I                             |
|                                      |            | Rear facing           |                       | Forward facing    Rear facing |
|                                      |            | Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)  |                       | 20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)       |
| Front passenger seat                 | Size class | Not ISOFIX equipped   |                       |                               |
|                                      | Size type  |                       |                       |                               |
| Second row rear outboard seat ISOFIX | Size class | C, D, E <sup>1</sup>  | A, B, B1 <sup>1</sup> | C, D <sup>1</sup>             |
|                                      | Size type  | IL                    | IL, IUF               | IL                            |
| Second row rear center seat          | Size class | Not ISOFIX equipped   |                       |                               |
|                                      | Size type  |                       |                       |                               |
| Third row rear seats                 | Size class | Not ISOFIX equipped   |                       |                               |
|                                      | Size type  |                       |                       |                               |

**IL** Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraints systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

**IUF** Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraints systems in the universal category.

<sup>1</sup>The capital letters A to G define the ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

# Child Safety

## Recommended Child Restraints

| Mass Group Categories       | Manufacturer  | Model                                            | Attachment                                         |
|-----------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0+<br>0–13 kg<br>(0–29 lb)  | Britax Römer. | Baby Safe Plus with<br>ISOFIX base. <sup>1</sup> | ISOFIX base or seatbelt<br>only.                   |
| 1<br>9–18 kg<br>(20–40 lb)  | Britax Römer. | Duo Plus. <sup>1</sup>                           | ISOFIX and top tether<br>anchors or seatbelt only. |
| 2<br>15–25 kg<br>(33–55 lb) | Britax Römer. | KidFix. <sup>1, 2</sup>                          | ISOFIX and seatbelt or<br>seatbelt only.           |
| 3<br>22–36 kg<br>(49–79 lb) | Britax Römer. | KidFix. <sup>1, 2</sup>                          | ISOFIX and seatbelt or<br>seatbelt only.           |

<sup>1</sup>We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

<sup>2</sup>We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

## i-Size Child Restraints

|                                 | Front Passenger Seat | Rear Outermost Seats | Rear Center Seat | Third Row Seats |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| i-Size child restraint systems. | X                    | i-U                  | X                | X               |

**i-U** Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

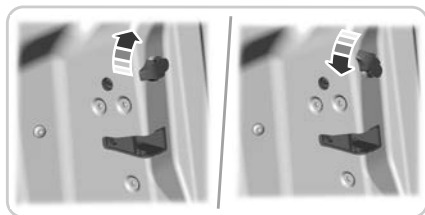
**X** Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E189148

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

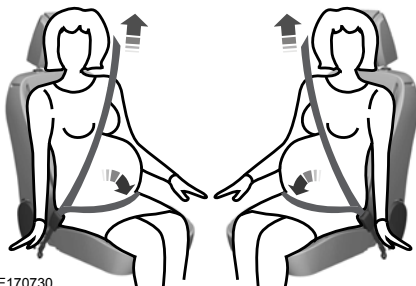
**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



E170730

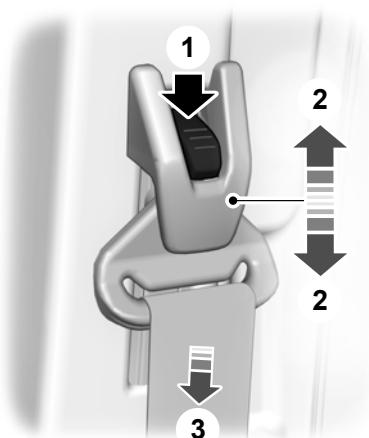
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



# Seatbelts



E165022

1. Press the button.
2. Slide the height adjuster up or down.
3. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on, a front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.

**To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item   | Action                      |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings    | Press the menu button.      |
| Information | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Seatbelts   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

### Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

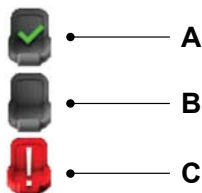
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

### Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

### Seatbelt Status



E267667

- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.

# Seatbelts

---

## Seatbelt Status Information Messages

| Message                                        | Description                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

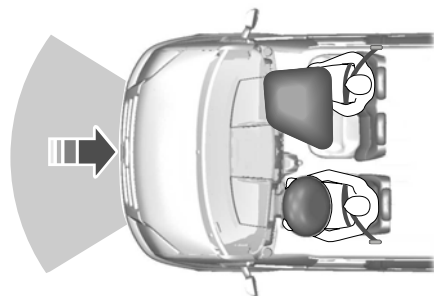
**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

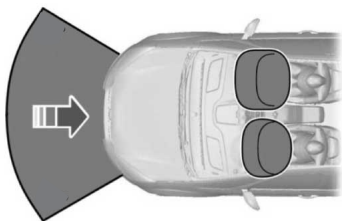


E268726

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates once in contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

## SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



E71313

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag off indicator illuminates.

**Note:** If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag On

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **On**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

## Supplementary Restraints System

6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag on indicator illuminates.

**Note:** *If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

### SIDE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

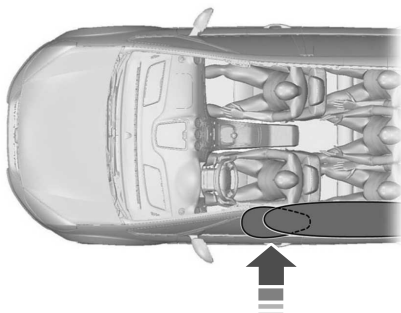
The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

## EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE



**WARNING:** Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

**Note:** *Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.*

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

**Note:** *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

**Note:** *In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

---

**Note:** *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

## In the Event of a Crash

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and initiates a call to the emergency services.*

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

**Note:** *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

**Note:** *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

**Note:** *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*



# Automatic Crash Notification System

---

**Note:** *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.*

## **Emergency Assistance may not work if:**

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

## **Important Information About Emergency Assistance**

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.
- Russia.
- Ukraine.

## **Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice**

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START



E272922

The key operates the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

**Note:** *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the key is inside your vehicle.*

### Removable Key Blade

The key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

# Keys and Remote Controls



E272923

Press the release button and pull the key blade out.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## Replacing the Battery



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

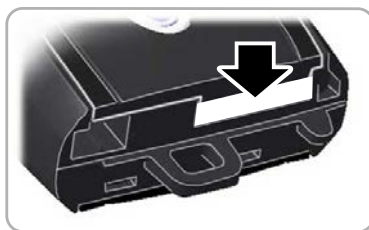
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E272923

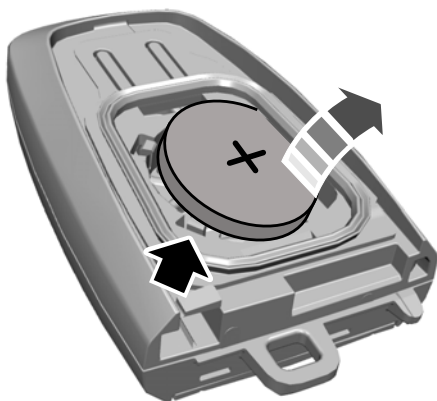
1. Press the release button and pull the key blade out.



E218401

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

# Keys and Remote Controls



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

## Locating Your Vehicle



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

## REMOTECONTROL-VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The buttons on the key operate the remote control function.



E272916

Press the button to release the key blade. Press and hold the button to fold the key blade back in when not in use.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## Replacing the Battery



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

## Keys and Remote Controls



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

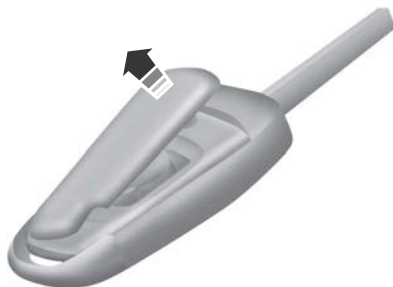
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.

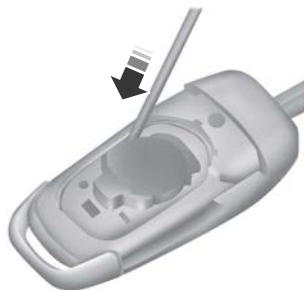


E272917

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently press the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



3. Carefully remove the battery cover.



**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

4. Insert the screwdriver in the position shown to release the battery.

# Keys and Remote Controls



5. Remove the battery.
6. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
7. Reinstall the battery cover.

## Locating Your Vehicle



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

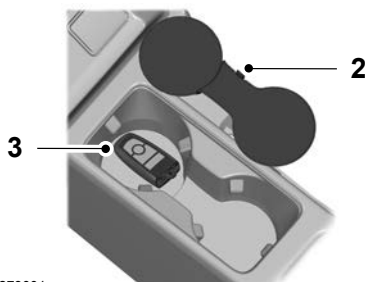
## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 38).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

## PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

1. Remove the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 38).



E273001

2. Remove the rubber mat.
3. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle.

## PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PASSENGER DOUBLE SEAT

1. Remove the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 38).

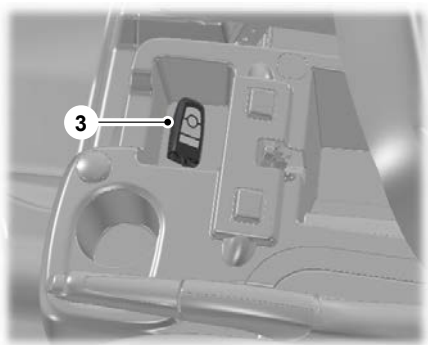


E289210

2. Raise the middle seat to access the under seat storage.

## Keys and Remote Controls

---



3. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.



## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system is designed to promote good driving behaviors using keys that you have programmed with some restricted settings.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### Non-Configurable Settings

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

### Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

### Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

### Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

### Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

### Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

**Note:** *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on.*

## Traction Control

If you set traction control to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item    | Action                                                                                               |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings     | Press the menu button.                                                                               |
| MyKey        | Press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                          |
| Create MyKey | Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display. |
|              | Switch the ignition off.                                                                             |

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## MyKey Information Messages

| Message                                      | Description                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Key is already a MyKey                       | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.  |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off. |

2. Switch the ignition on.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Place an admin key in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 43).

**To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item    | Action                                                                                               |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings     | Press the menu button.                                                                               |
| MyKey        | Press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                          |
| Create MyKey | Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display. |
|              | Switch the ignition off.                                                                             |

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## MyKey Information Messages

| Message                                      | Description                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Place key in backup location                 | Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Passive Key Backup Position</b> (page 43). |
| Key is already a MyKey                       | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.                                                           |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.                                                          |

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

# MyKey™

---

**To program a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item | Action                                                                                                                                |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings  | Press the menu button.                                                                                                                |
| MyKey     | Press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>Select a setting and press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>Configure the setting.<br>Switch the ignition off. |

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all

restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To clear all MyKeys, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item    | Action                                                                                               |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings     | Press the menu button.                                                                               |
| MyKey        | Press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                          |
| Clear MyKeys | Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display. |

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

Switch the ignition on.

**To find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item  | Action                      |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings   | Press the menu button.      |
| MyKey      | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| MyKey info | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 43).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).

## **Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?**

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 46).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

## **Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?**

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.



# Doors and Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Locking

#### Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

#### Locking with the Remote Control



Press the button.

**Note:** You can lock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you lock your vehicle, the interior unlock button works for a short period of time.

### Double Locking



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

**Note:** If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.

#### Double Locking with the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

### Double Locking with the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking

#### Unlocking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

#### Unlocking with the Remote Control



Press the button.

**Note:** You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.

### Unlocking the Liftgate



Press the button.

**Note:** The liftgate does not automatically open.

**Note:** The liftgate unlocks if you unlock all doors.

### Locking and Unlocking Confirmation

When you lock your vehicle, the direction indicators flash to confirm your vehicle has locked.

When you unlock your vehicle, the direction indicators flash to confirm your vehicle has unlocked.

# Doors and Locks

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to lock and unlock all the doors. The lamp illuminates with the doors locked.

## Opening the Sliding Door (If Equipped)



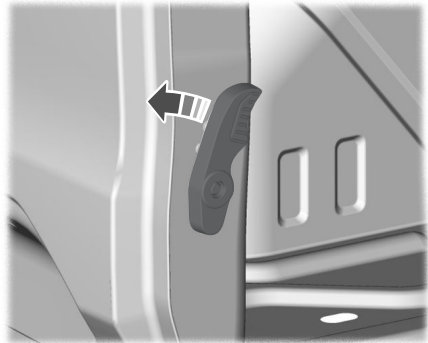
E164229

## Opening the Double Rear Doors (If Equipped)

**Note:** If there is a ladder fitted to the rear cargo door, do not open the door fully if the side-loading door is open.

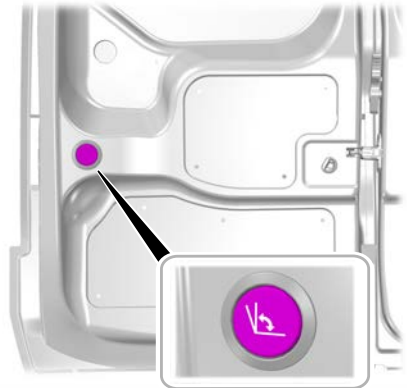


E148805



E148806

## Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors



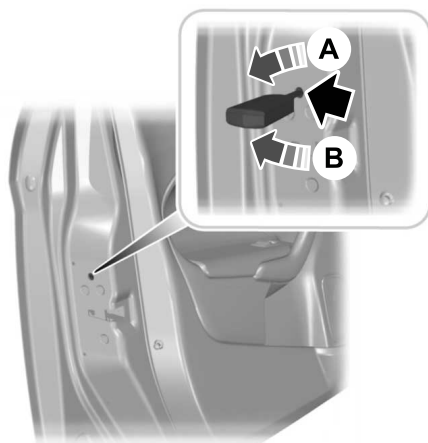
E289574

Press the button to fully open the double rear doors.

## Locking the Doors Individually With the Key

**Note:** If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

# Doors and Locks



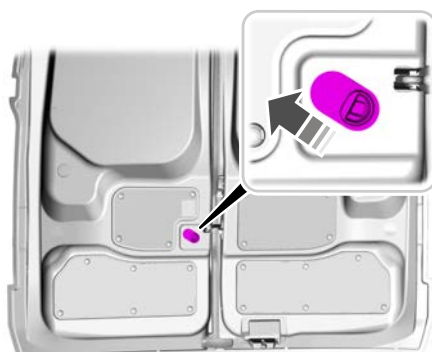
## Left-hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

## Right-hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

## Rear Emergency Exit (If Equipped)



E180300

Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

## Automatic Re-Locking

The doors will re-lock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

## Automatic Unlocking

You can turn this function on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 84). When enabled, the automatic unlocking feature will unlock all doors within 10 minutes of the end of a drive cycle, when the driver door is opened and the ignition is off.

## One-Stage Unlocking

You can turn this function on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 84).

When you use this feature, you will unlock all doors including the liftgate and the sliding door.

You will unlock all of the doors when you:

- Turn the key in the door lock.
- Pull either interior handle (except if you have double locked the doors).
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

## Two-Stage Unlocking

You will unlock the front doors when you:

- Turn the key in the door lock.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.

# Doors and Locks

You will unlock all doors including the liftgate and the sliding door when you:

- Turn the key in the door lock to the unlock position twice within three seconds.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the interior unlock button twice.

## Configurable Unlocking

Configurable unlocking is set at the time of vehicle purchase. It allows you to select which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the luggage compartment unlock button on your remote control once or twice. You cannot turn this feature back on if you have had it turned off. See an authorized dealer for further information.

## SLIDING DOOR



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Fully close the sliding door to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not open or close the sliding doors when your hands are near the tracks or rollers.



E 145826

When the rear doors are fully open, make sure that you do not step on the cable or mechanism at the base of the door aperture. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### General Information

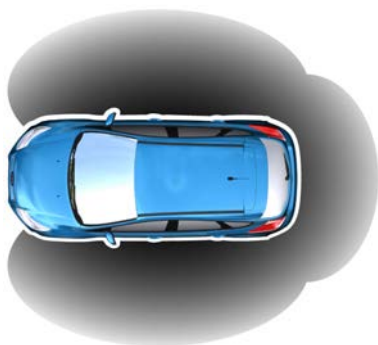
The system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The door handle is not clean.

**Note:** *If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.

# Doors and Locks



E78276

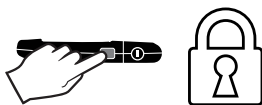
Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the passive key. You can also use the passive key as a remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 53).

## Locking Your Vehicle



The locking sensors are on the front door handles.

Touch a locking sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm.

For vehicles with double locking, touch a locking sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm.

**Note:** When locking your vehicle, do not grip the door handle.

**Note:** Your vehicle remains locked for approximately one second. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## At the Liftgate

The liftgate cannot be closed and will reopen if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

**Note:** If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.

## Unlocking Your Vehicle



Pull a front exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

# Doors and Locks

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

## Unlocking Only the Driver's Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 53).

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located on the driver's and front passenger's door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If the front passenger's door is the first door which is opened, all the doors and the liftgate will be unlocked.

## Disabled Keys

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them. To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key that has not been disabled or the remote control unlocking function. All passive keys will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

**Note:** You can still start your vehicle when the passive key is in the back-up position. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E272923

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

**Note:** Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.

# Liftgate

## MANUAL LIFTGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

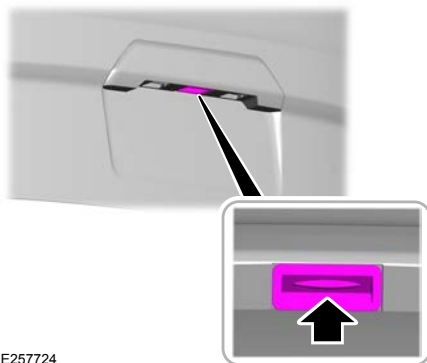
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Unlocking the Liftgate



Press the button on the remote control.

## Opening the Liftgate



E257724

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

## Closing the Liftgate

Pull the strap inside the liftgate to help with closing.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

**Note:** Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM

### Alarm System (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may have one of the following alarm systems:

- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Perimeter alarm.

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

### Interior Sensors

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not cover the interior sensors.

### Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

### Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system that sounds a siren when the alarm is triggered. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:



# Security

---

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the navigation system or certain types of audio system.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flashers will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full Guard and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

### Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 84).

### Ask on Exit

If you switch ask on exit on, you can choose which level of guard you require after you switch the ignition off.

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 53).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 110).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

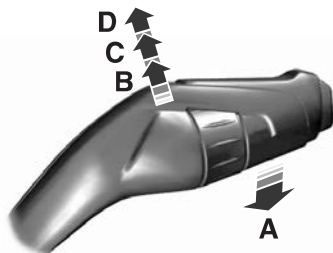


E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E197525

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

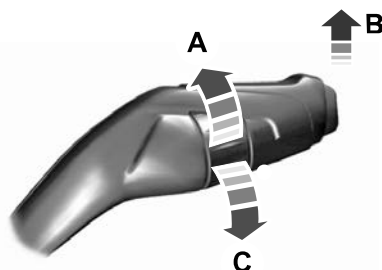
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 257). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 257).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

## Intermittent Wipe



E197526

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

**Note:** When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

## AUTOWIPERS

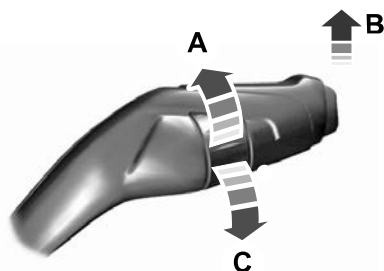
Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

**Note:** The wipers remain in a slightly raised position during operation and only return to the park position a short time after the rain sensor detects no water on the windshield.

You can switch autowipers on or off in the information display.

**Note:** If you switch autowipers off in the information display, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.

# Wipers and Washers



E197526

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## Settings

**To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item        | Action                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings         | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Wipers           | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Rain sensing     | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 257).

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E144498

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper



E171615

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

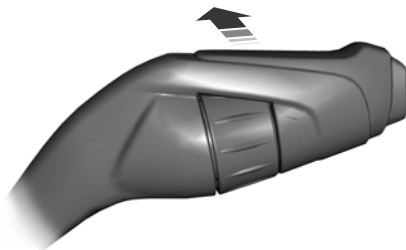
Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch continuous wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

### Reverse Gear Wipe (If Equipped)

If you shift to reverse (R) when the windshield wipers are on, the rear window wiper turns on.

### Rear Window Washer



E167407

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

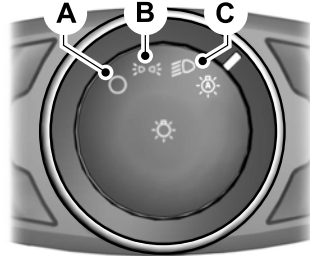
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting Control Positions



- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

### Parking Lamps

**Note:** Prolonged use of the parking lamps will cause the battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Parking lamps may turn off automatically. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

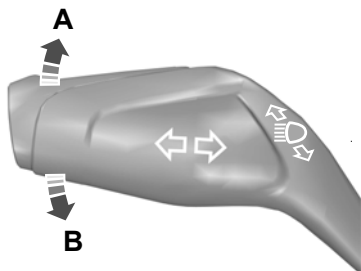
Switch the ignition off.

### Both Sides

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

# Lighting

## One Side



E163717

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## Headlamp High Beam



E163718

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

## Headlamp Flasher



E163719

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

## Home Safe Lighting

### Switching the System On

Switch the ignition off and pull the direction indicator lever toward the steering wheel. A tone will sound.

### Switching the System Off

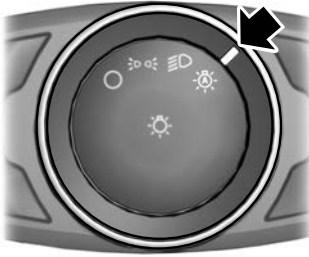
It will turn off automatically after three minutes with a door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes. Alternatively, pull the direction indicator lever toward the steering wheel or switch the ignition on.

## AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

# Lighting



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

**Note:** *If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.*

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

**Note:** *If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



# Lighting



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

## About Automatic High Beam Control

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.

## Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off

**To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item        | Action                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings         | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Lighting         | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Auto highbeam    | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## Automatic High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

# Lighting

## Automatic High Beam Control Information Messages

| Message                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                               |
| Front camera temporarily not available   | The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## FRONT FOG LAMPS

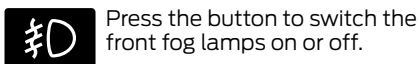
### Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



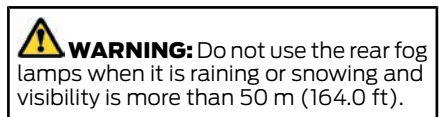
**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

### Front Fog Lamp Indicator



## REAR FOG LAMPS

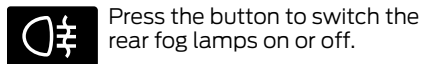
### Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off



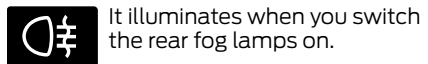
You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



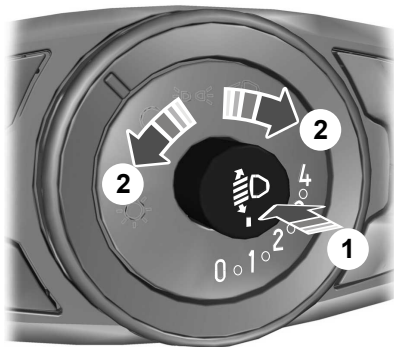
### Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



# Lighting

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



E132711

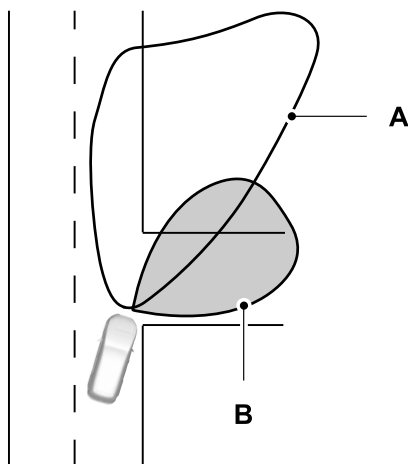
1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

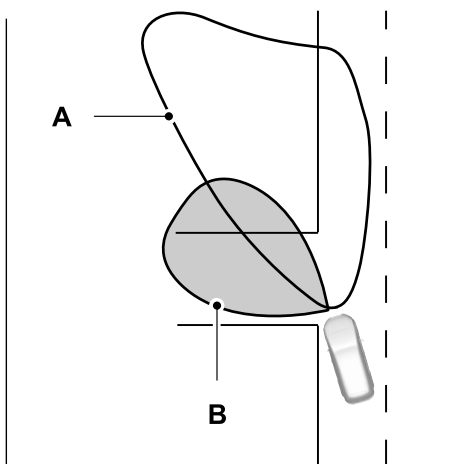
**Note:** Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

3. Press to close the control.

## CORNERING LAMPS



E72898



# Lighting

- A Headlamp beam.
- B Cornering lamp beam.

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



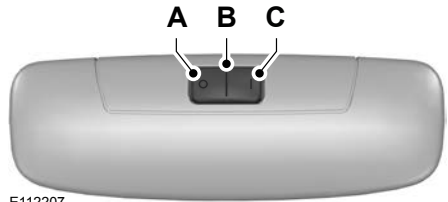
E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Courtesy Lamp



E112207

- A Off
- B Door contact
- C On

If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamp will switch on when you unlock your vehicle, open a door or the liftgate. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

The courtesy lamp will also switch on when you switch the ignition off. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time or when you start the engine.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch on. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

## Reading Lamps



E112208

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS-VEHICLES WITH: REAR POWER WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Close (If Equipped)

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Close

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the control until you fully close the window. Continue to hold the control for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the control.

3. Press and hold the control until you fully open the window.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control until you fully close the window.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

### Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

### Overriding Bounce-Back



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within a few seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

**Note:** If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Resetting Bounce-Back



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Start the engine.

# Windows and Mirrors

1. Lift and hold the control until you fully close the window. Continue to hold the control for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the control.
3. Press and hold the control until you fully open the window.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control until you fully close the window.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

## POWER WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN DRIVER WINDOW



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

## One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

### Global Closing



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

**Note:** Bounce-back is on during global closing.

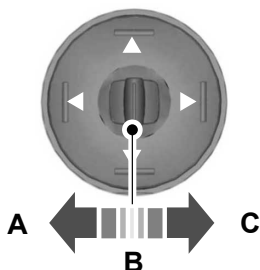
# Windows and Mirrors

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Adjusting the Mirrors



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror switch.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror switch.

### Folding the Mirrors

#### Vehicles with Manual Fold

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

#### Vehicles with Auto-fold

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

You can switch auto-fold on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 84).

**Note:** The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

## INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITHOUT: AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

## INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



# Windows and Mirrors

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

## SUN SHADES



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the sun shade or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the sun shade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade.

The control is located in the overhead console.

The sun shade has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop motion during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Sun Shade



E223717

Fully press and release the front of the control to open the sun shade.

Fully press and release the rear of the control to close the sun shade.

## Bounce-Back

The sun shade will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

## Sun Shade Relearning



**WARNING:** The bounce-back function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving sun shade.

**Note:** You must start the relearning process within 30 seconds of switching the ignition on.

In case the sun shade no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press the front of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.

## Windows and Mirrors

---

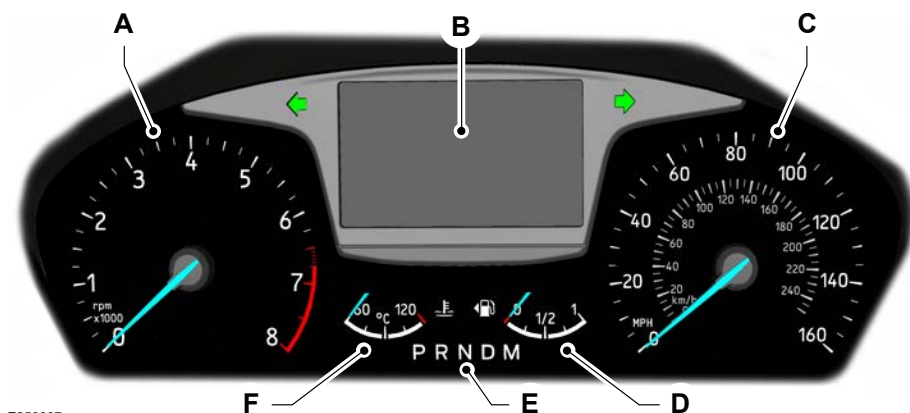
2. Press the rear of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold the front of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully opens.
4. Press and hold the rear of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully closes.

If you do not complete Step 2 within 15 seconds of Step 1, the relearning function end. Switch the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then switch the ignition back on again. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E258097

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission gearshift lever position indicator.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

## Information Display

### Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

The system detects unauthorized odometer adjustments to avoid total distance reading fraud. If the system detects an unauthorized odometer adjustment, the total distance reading displays XXXX. Recovery of the original mileage could result in system damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty and may carry a significant expense.

### Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 86).

### Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **Personalized Settings** (page 86).

### Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

# Instrument Cluster



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

**Note:** *The system reduces the engine speed if you continue to operate the engine at a high engine speed.*

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

### Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Auto-Start-Stop Indicator



It illuminates when the engine has automatically stopped. It flashes to inform you when the engine needs to restart. The indicator is shown with a strikethrough if the system is not available.

### Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 204).

# Instrument Cluster

## Brake System Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

## Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 190).

## Direction Indicator



Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 4°C (39°F) or below.

# Instrument Cluster

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

## Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

## Ignition Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 287).

## Message Center Indicator



It illuminates when a new message is stored in the information display. The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 254).

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.



## Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

## Automatic Transmission Warning Chime

Sounds when you have not moved the transmission selector lever to park. A message will be shown in the display.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION



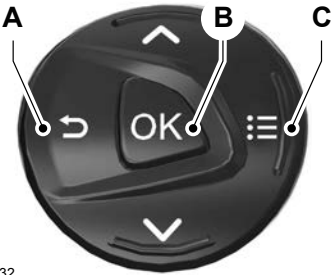
**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.

## Information Display Controls



E275331



E275332

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

### Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu. You can also use it to go back to the main screen.

## Information Display Menus

### Main Menu

| Menu Item                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Trip computer 1</b> or <b>Trip computer 2</b> |
| MyView                                           |
| Driver assist.                                   |
| Navigation                                       |



# Information Displays

| Menu Item |
|-----------|
| Audio     |
| Phone     |
| Settings  |

## Submenus

### *Trip computer 1 and Trip computer 2*

| Menu Item               |
|-------------------------|
| Trip computer 1         |
| Trip computer 2         |
| Reset individual values |
| Configure view          |

## MyView

| Menu Item           |
|---------------------|
| Digital speedometer |
| Fuel economy        |
| Trip computer/audio |
| Eco coach           |
| Calm screen         |

## Driver assist.

| Menu Item                |
|--------------------------|
| Traction control         |
| BLIS                     |
| Pre-collision Assist     |
| Traffic sign recognition |
| Lane keeping system      |
| Driver alert             |

| Menu Item           |
|---------------------|
| Wrong way alert     |
| Hill Start Assist   |
| Cross traffic alert |
| Eco coach           |
| Trailer control     |
| Cruise control      |
| Speed limiter       |
| Rear Park Pilot     |

## Navigation

| Menu Item              |
|------------------------|
| Home                   |
| Favourite destinations |
| Previous destinations  |

## Audio

| Menu Item         |
|-------------------|
| Radio             |
| CD                |
| USB device.       |
| Bluetooth device. |

## Phone

| Menu Item      |
|----------------|
| All calls      |
| Incoming calls |
| Missed calls   |
| Outgoing calls |

# Information Displays

## Settings

| Menu Item           |
|---------------------|
| Information         |
| Display             |
| Driver assistance   |
| Vehicle settings    |
| Vehicle maintenance |
| MyKey               |

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

### Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Active Park Assist

| Message                 | Description                                                                  |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Active Park malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

## Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### Measure Units

To swap between imperial and metric units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Swapping between imperial and metric units will affect the following displays:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.

### Switching Chimes Off

The following chimes can be switched off:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

# Information Displays

## Adaptive Cruise Control

| Message                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Adaptive cruise control malfunction                             | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                         |
| Adaptive cruise control not available                           | The system is not available. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 191).                                                                    |
| Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual | The radar has reduced visibility. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 191).                                                               |
| Cruise control active Adaptive braking off                      | You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.                                                                              |
| Front sensor not aligned                                        | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                         |
| Adaptive cruise control Driver resume control                   | The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.                                                                                           |
| Adaptive cruise control Speed too low to activate               | Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.                                                                                      |
| Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available    | Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Alarm

| Message                                   | Description                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm | Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. |

# Information Displays

## Automatic High Beam Control

| Message                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen  | The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                               |
| Front camera temporarily not available    | The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera malfunction Service required | The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                              |

## Auto-Start-Stop

| Message                                       | Description                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine    | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.  |
| Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine   | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine  | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press any pedal to restart the engine.        |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into neutral (N) to restart the engine. |
| Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine      | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into park (P) to restart the engine.    |
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required        | The system is not functioning. Restart the engine.                                                                   |
| Auto StartStop malfunction Service required   | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                         |

# Information Displays

## Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems

| Message                                               | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BLIS malfunction                                      | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                            |
| BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual          | The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 204).                    |
| BLIS deactivated Trailer attached                     | You have attached a trailer to your vehicle. The system turns off.                                      |
| Vehicle coming from left<br>Vehicle coming from right | The system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 204).                      |
| Cross traffic alert                                   | Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic. |
| Cross traffic malfunction                             | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                            |
| Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual | The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Cross Traffic Alert</b> (page 206).                              |
| Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached      | You have attached a trailer to your vehicle. The system turns off.                                      |

## Brake System

| Message            | Description                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Check brake system | The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Information Displays

## Doors and Locks

| Message                                                                                                 | Description                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Driver door open<br>Passenger door open<br>Rear left door open<br>Rear right door open<br>Liftgate open | The door listed is not completely closed.  |
| Bonnet open                                                                                             | The hood is not completely closed.         |
| Switches inhibited<br>Security mode                                                                     | The system has disabled the door switches. |

## Driver Alert

| Message                                  | Description                                                     |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Driver fatigue warning<br>Rest now       | Take a break due to low alertness levels.                       |
| Driver fatigue warning<br>Rest suggested | We recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels. |

## Engine

| Message                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine coolant overtemperature | Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Information Displays

## Fuel System

| Message                                             | Description                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuel level low                                      | An early reminder of a low fuel condition.                                                                  |
| Fuel level low distance metric:##0 km to empty      |                                                                                                             |
| Fuel level low distance imperial:##0 miles to empty |                                                                                                             |
| Check fuel fill inlet                               | The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.                                                             |
| Fuel pressure low                                   | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                |
| Water in fuel Drain filter                          | The system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Headlamps

| Message                             | Description                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Check adaptive headlamps See manual | Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Hill Start Assist

| Message                         | Description                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hill start assist not available | The system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 169). |

## Lane Keeping System

| Message                                          | Description                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lane keeping system malfunction Service required | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

| Message                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine oil level low Add oil              | The engine oil level is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 254). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.    |
| Engine oil pressure low                   | The engine oil pressure is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 254). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Change engine oil soon                    | The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 254).                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Oil change required                       | The oil life left is at 0%. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 254).                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Brake fluid level low                     | The brake fluid level is low or the brake system has malfunctioned. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 256). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Power reduced to lower engine temperature | The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Transport mode Contact dealer             | Transport mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                         |
| Factory mode Contact dealer               | Factory mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                           |
| Washer fluid level low                    | The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 257).                                                                                                                                                                        |



# Information Displays

## MyKey

| Message                                      | Description                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Place key in backup location                 | Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Passive Key Backup Position</b> (page 43). |
| Key is already a MyKey                       | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.                                                           |
| Hold OK to create MyKey                      | Displays when creating a MyKey.                                                                                                            |
| Creation completed                           | Displays to confirm that a MyKey has been created.                                                                                         |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.                                                          |
| MyKey not created                            | Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.                                                                                            |
| Hold OK to clear MyKeys                      | Displays when clearing all MyKeys.                                                                                                         |
| All MyKeys cleared                           | Displays to confirm that all MyKeys have been cleared.                                                                                     |

## Parking Aid

| Message                                                  | Description                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parking aid malfunction                                  | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                  |
| Check Park Pilot                                         |                                                                                                               |
| Check front Park Pilot                                   |                                                                                                               |
| Check rear Park Pilot                                    | The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Parking Aids</b> (page 174).                                           |
| Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual       |                                                                                                               |
| Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual |                                                                                                               |
| Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual  |                                                                                                               |
| Rear Park Pilot disabled Trailer attached                | You have attached a bike rack, trailer or other object near the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. |

# Information Displays

## Parking Brake

| Message            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Parking Heater

| Message                                   | Description                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Park heater not started<br>Low fuel level | Displays if the parking heater fails to operate due to low fuel level. Refuel as soon as possible. |

## Pre-Collision Assist

| Message                                           | Description                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pre-collision assist not available                | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked | The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Pre-Collision Assist</b> (page 213).  |

## Rear Window Lock

| Message                              | Description                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Child lock malfunction<br>See manual | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Remote Control

| Message                      | Description                                                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Key battery low Replace soon | The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. |

# Information Displays

## Seatbelt Reminder

| Message                                        | Description                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Level

| Message                                                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AdBlue® low Range :<br>XXXX km Refill soon<br><br>AdBlue® low Range :<br>XXXX mls Refill soon | Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible. See <b>Selective Catalytic Reductant System</b> (page 153).                                                                                                         |
| AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km<br><br>AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine                                                   | The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank. The minimum AdBlue refill quantity required to restart the engine is 5 L (1.1 gal). See <b>Selective Catalytic Reductant System</b> (page 153). |

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) System Malfunction

| Message                                                                                     | Description                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km<br><br>AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system malfunction Service required                                                 |                                                                              |
| AdBlue® system Service required to start engine                                             |                                                                              |

# Information Displays

## Stability Control

| Message              | Description                                                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ESC Service required | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Starting System

| Message                         | Description                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Full accessory power active     | Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.                                           |
| Press brake to start            | A reminder to press the brake pedal when starting your vehicle.                                               |
| Press clutch to start           | A reminder to press the clutch pedal when starting your vehicle.                                              |
| Press brake and clutch to start | A reminder to press the brake and clutch pedals when starting your vehicle.                                   |
| Cranking time exceeded          | Displays if your vehicle fails to start.                                                                      |
| No key detected                 | The system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.                                           |
| Starting system malfunction     | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                  |
| Restart now or key is needed    | Displays if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle. |

# Information Displays

## Steering System

| Message                                      | Description                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Steering loss Stop safely                    | The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Steering malfunction Service now             | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                    |
| Steering assist malfunction Service required |                                                                                                                 |
| Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now        |                                                                                                                 |

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

| Message                           | Description                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tyre pressure low                 | One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.                                                                                    |
| Tyre pressure monitor malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                 |
| Tyre pressure sensor malfunction  | The system has malfunctioned or the spare tire is in use. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Transmission

| Message                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Transmission malfunction Service now     | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Transmission Service required            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Transmission overtemperature Stop safely | The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Transmission overheating Stop safely     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Transmission too hot Press brake         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## Information Displays

| Message                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Transmission limited function See manual | The transmission has limited functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                       |
| Transmission warming up Please wait      | Displays at low outside temperatures, if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear.<br>Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display. |
| Transmission not in Park                 | Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).                                                                                                                                                   |
| Press brake to unlock selector lever     | Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.                                                                                                                                                |
| Selector lever unlocked                  | Displays when the selector lever unlocks.                                                                                                                                                        |

## Wireless Accessory Charging

| Message                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wireless charger active                                                                                                         | Wireless charging has started.                                                                                         |
| Charging terminated<br>Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging. | Wireless charging has stopped. Remove objects from the charging surface and place phone on center of charging surface. |

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Switch **System** on.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 304).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

---

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

## Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.



# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

### Switching the Climate Control On and Off



### Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



**Note:** The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to maximize defrosting.

**Note:** The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.

**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on.

**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

### Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

**Note:** The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### Setting the Blower Motor Speed



**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Note:** When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

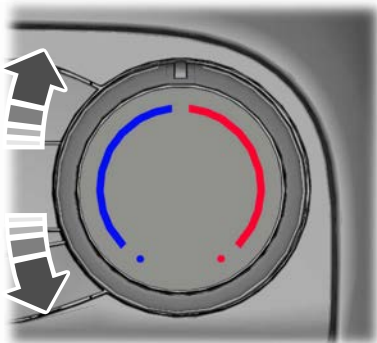


### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



# Climate Control

## Setting the Temperature



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

### Switching the Climate Control On and Off



### Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



**Note:** The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

**Note:** Recirculated air could turn off or be prevented from turning on in all air flow modes except maximum cooling to reduce the risk of the windows fogging up. It could also turn on and off when you direct air to the instrument panel or footwell air vents during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

### Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press the button to switch auto mode on.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

# Climate Control

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Press and release **+** or **-** to set the volume of air circulated in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

## Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



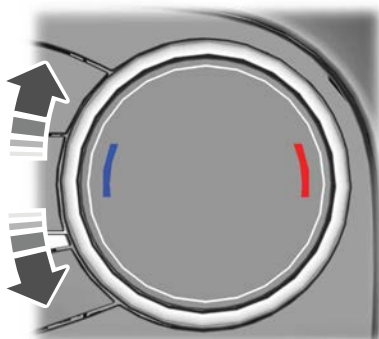
## Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



## Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



## Setting the Temperature



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

**Note:** You can adjust the temperature between 15.5–29.5°C (60–85°F).

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high, the system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

# Climate Control

---

**Note:** When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and air is directed to the windshield air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press **MAX A/C**.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

## Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather conditions, direct air to the windshield air vents.

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the highest temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell and windshield air vents.

# Climate Control

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Select maximum cooling.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.
- Press A/C.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

## Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

## REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS

### Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off



Press the button on the front climate controls.

**Note:** You can also switch off the rear passenger climate controls by adjusting the rear blower motor speed to zero.

### Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed



## Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents



When you direct air to the overhead air vents, the system distributes cold air.

## Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the footwell air vents, the system distributes hot air.

## Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents and the Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the Overhead and footwell air vents, the system distributes warm air.

## HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

## HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

# Climate Control

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

### Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off

**To switch the auxiliary heater on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item        | Action                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings         | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Aux heater       | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

### Using the Auxiliary Heater



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the fuel-operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.

**Note:** When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

# Climate Control

## Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Parking Heater

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.

### Using the Parking Heater



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the fuel-operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

When you correctly use the system it:

- Keeps the windows clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.
- Assists the engine to reach normal operating temperature sooner.

**Note:** If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

## Parking Heater Information Messages

| Message                                   | Action                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Park heater not started<br>Low fuel level | Displays if the parking heater fails to operate due to low fuel level. Refuel as soon as possible. |

## Switching Continue Heat On

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

**Note:** You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the check box in the information display resets to unchecked.

# Climate Control

**To switch continue heat on, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item        | Action                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings         | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Park heater      | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Continue heat    | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## Setting the Timer

**The system has three different modes, that you can set in the information display.**

| Timer Mode | Description                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Once       | Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time. <sup>1</sup>                |
| Time one   | Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.        |
| Time two   | Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times. |

<sup>1</sup>You must set the day and time for this mode before you check the box in the information display.

**Note:** *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

**To set a timer mode, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item          | Action                      |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings           | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Park heater        | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Heater programming | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |



# Climate Control

---

| Menu Item | Action                      |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| Activate  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Once      | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Activate  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Time one  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Activate  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Time two  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Activate  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



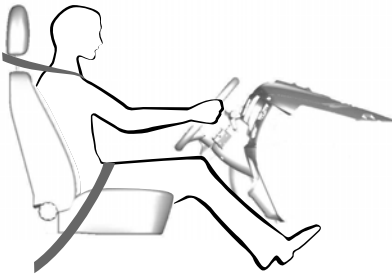
**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

### Adjusting the Head Restraints

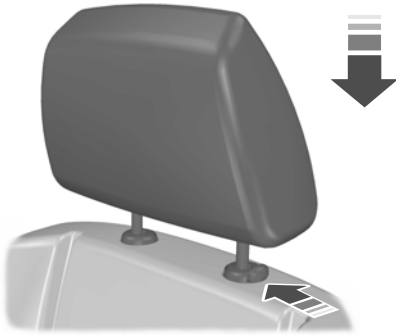
Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

# Seats

## Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

## Lowering the Head Restraints



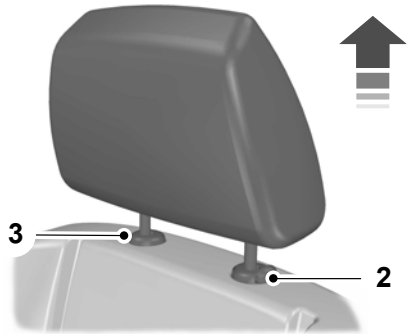
E289088

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

## Removing the Head Restraints

### Front Head Restraints

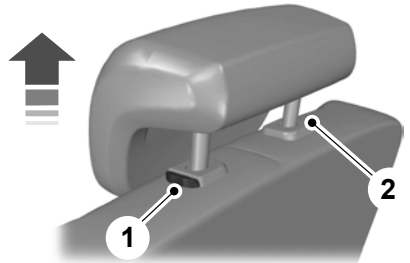
1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E288933

2. Press and hold the locking button.
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to release the retaining clip.

### Rear Head Restraints



E288934

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to release the retaining clip.

# Seats

## MANUAL SEATS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

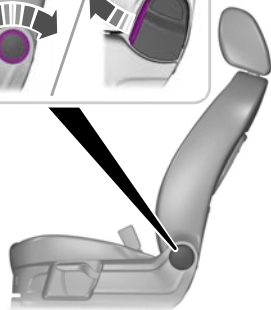
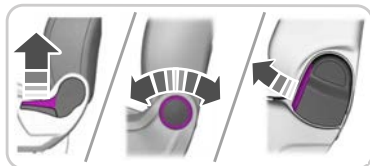


**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



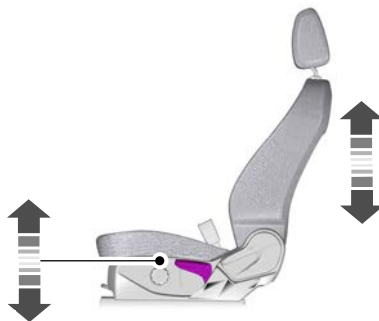
E130249

### Adjusting the Seat Backrest



E70731

### Adjusting the Seat Height (If Equipped)



E70730

# Seats

## Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E142199

## Single Passenger Seat (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



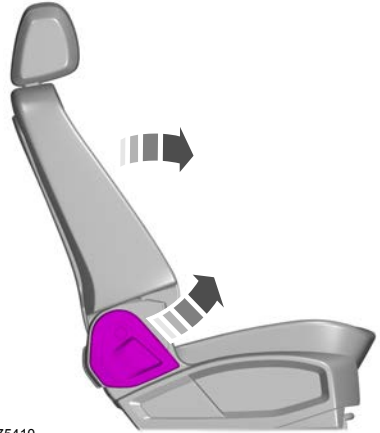
**WARNING:** Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

## Folding the Seat Backrest



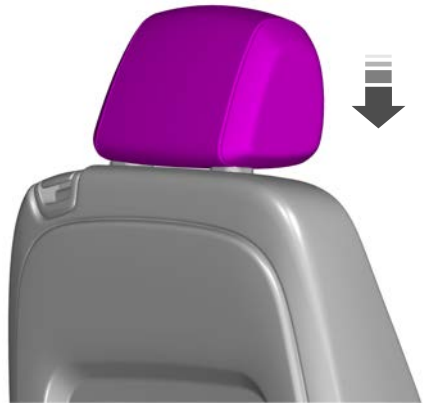
E275437

1. Move the seat fully backward.



E275410

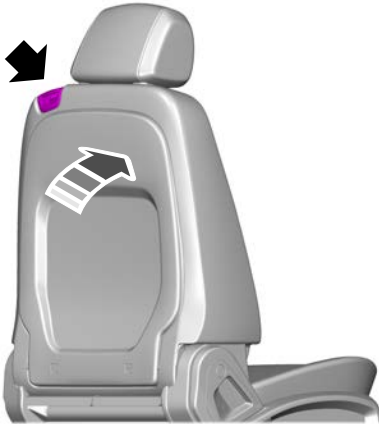
2. Fold the seat backrest fully forward.



E275411

3. Fully lower the head restraint.

# Seats



E275412

4. Pull the lever.
5. Push the seat backrest forward.

## Dual Passenger Seat (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

## Folding the Center Seat Backrest Down



E168479

1. Pull the strap.
2. Fold the seat backrest down.

## Folding the Center Seat Cushion Up



E168478

# Seats

## Folding the Outer Seat Down



E167550

1. Pull the strap.
2. Fold the seat backrest and seat cushion forward to the lower position.

**Note:** The seat cushion automatically folds with the seat backrest.

## Folding the Outer Seat Cushion Up



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fold the seat cushion down before you drive away.



E168476

1. Pull the release lever.
2. Fold the seat cushion up until it locks into place.

## Folding the Outer Seat Cushion Down



E168477

1. Pull the release lever.

# Seats

2. Fold the seat cushion down until it locks into place.

## REAR SEATS - SHORT WHEELBASE



**WARNING:** Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

## Second Row Seats

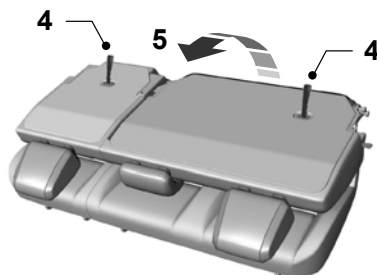
### Folding the Seat

1. Fully lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 110).



E271963

2. Pull the lever on the top of the seat.
3. Fold the seat backrest forward.

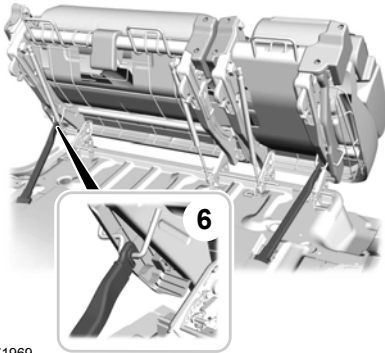


E271964

4. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat backrest.
5. Raise the seat.



# Seats



E271969

6. Lift the support rod and connect it to the seat frame. This prevents the seat from falling backward.

**Note:** Rear row occupants can sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seat backrest in the folded position, but not when the seat is in the tilted position.

## Unfolding the Seat

1. Disconnect the support rod from the seat frame.
2. Unfold the seat backward and lock into position.
3. Unfold the seat backrest backward and lock into position.

## REAR SEATS - LONG WHEELBASE



**WARNING:** When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

## Second Row Seats

### Folding the Seat

1. Fully lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 110).

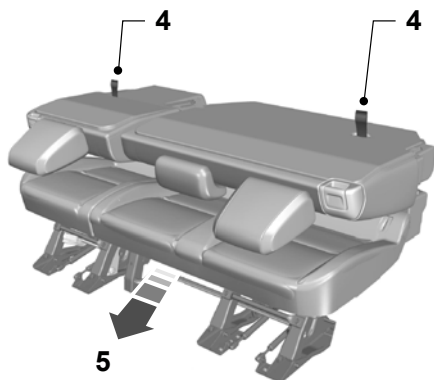


E271960

2. Pull the lever on the top of the seat.

# Seats

3. Fold the seat backrest forward, then push down on the center of the seat backrest to lock the latches.



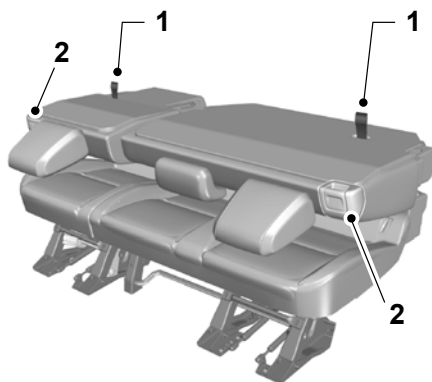
E271961

4. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat backrest.
5. Move the seat forward to the lowered position, then push down on the center of the seat backrest to lock the latches.

**Note:** A distinct click sounds when the seat is locked in the lowered position.

**Note:** Rear row occupants can sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seat backrest in the folded position, but not when the seat is in the tilted position.

## Unfolding the Seat



E271962

1. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat backrest, lift the seat and push down to lock into position.
2. Pull the lever on the top of the seat, unfold the seat backrest backward and lock into position. Push down in the center of the seat to make sure the latches are locked.

**Note:** You cannot unfold the seat backrest if a red flag is visible on the large strap. Make sure the seat is locked and the red flag is not visible.

## Third Row Seats

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

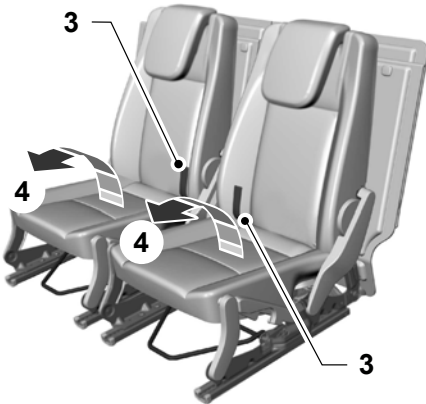
# Seats



E271965

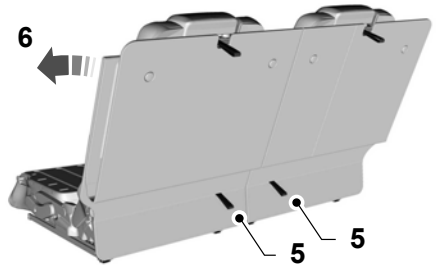
## Folding the Seat Backrest

1. Fully lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 110).
2. Fully move the seat backward.



E271966

3. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat cushion.
4. Fold the seat cushion forward.

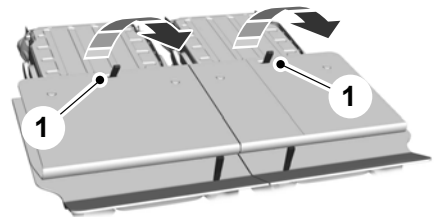


E272026

5. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat backrest.
6. Fold the seat backrest forward.

**Note:** *Rear row occupants can sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seat backrest in the folded position, but not when the seat is in the tilted position.*

## Unfolding the Seat Backrest



E167644

1. Pull the strap on the rear of the seat backrest.
2. Unfold the seat backrest backward and lock into position.
3. Unfold the seat cushion backward and lock into position.

# Seats

## Creating a Level Load Floor



E167645

The carpeted cover is held in position by magnets. Fold the carpeted cover forward to cover up the folded seats.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not switch the heated seat on if the seat is wet.

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature.

## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

## Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



| Message                         |
|---------------------------------|
| Check rear seats for occupants. |

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

You can use the power point for up to 20 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Power points may be in the following locations:

- Front of the floor console.
- Rear of the floor console.
- Right hand side of the luggage compartment.
- Instrument panel cluster storage compartment.

## 230 Volt AC Power Point



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

**Note:** Depending on the country in which your vehicle is built, the voltage supply is either 110 volts or 230 volts.

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is providing power.
- Off: The ignition is off and the power point is not providing power.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

## Auxiliary Power Points

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

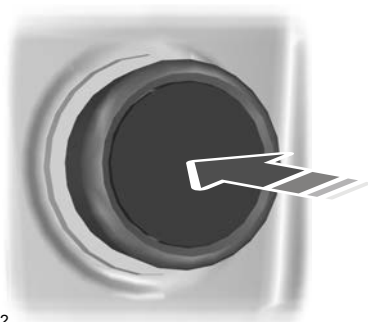
Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

### CIGAR LIGHTER



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

**Note:** If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

The system supports one wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.



## Auxiliary Power Points

**Note:** Devices without built-in Qi standards for wireless charging require an additional Qi receiver or sleeve.

**Note:** Software and firmware updates to your device could affect the charging operation.

Make sure the charging area is clean and free from obstruction before charging a device to allow the device to lay flat on the charging area.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards near the charging area when charging a device. This could damage the magnetic strip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins or keys on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.



The charging area is below the audio unit.



E270527

Place the device with the charging side down to begin charging. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

**Note:** Charging time and temperature are dependent on the device used. The system stops charging the device if it reaches a high temperature.

# Storage Compartments

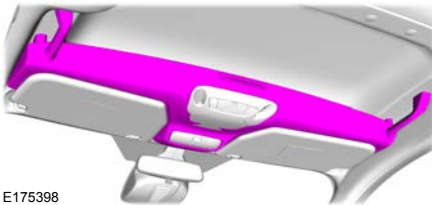
## CUP HOLDERS

**WARNING:** Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE

**WARNING:** Do not place heavy objects in the storage compartment. Heavy objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



E175398

## Rear Door Storage Compartment (If Equipped)



E188482

## FOLDING TRAY

**WARNING:** Do not use the trays when your vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the lowered position before setting off.



E72630

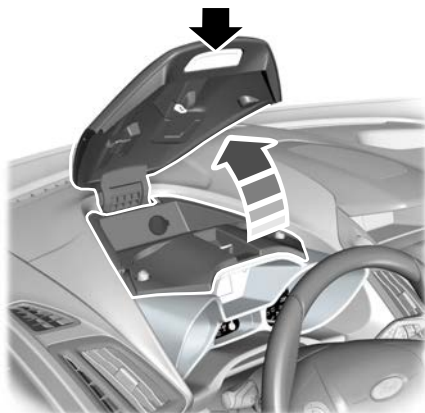
## UNDER SEAT STORAGE



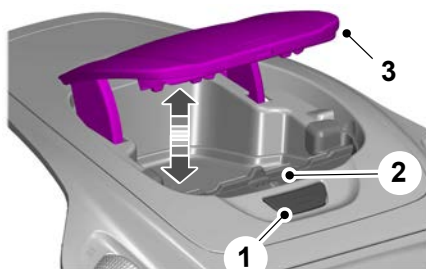
E289210

# Storage Compartments

## INSTRUMENT PANEL STORAGE COMPARTMENT



E210263



1. Press the button.
2. Place your device on the base.
3. Adjust the storage compartment lid to secure your device.

**Note:** Do not leave your device in the device holder when leaving your vehicle.

## DEVICE HOLDER



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

**Note:** Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

**Note:** Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

### Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

### Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

### Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E144447

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *The ignition turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

## Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *If you release the clutch pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.*

## Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *If you release the brake pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.*

## Vehicles with a Diesel Engine (If Equipped)

**Note:** *The engine does not crank until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.*

## Failure to Start - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

1. Insert the passive key into the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 43).
2. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

If the engine does not crank after you fully press the clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch, do the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

1. Fully press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.

2. Apply the parking brake.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.

4. Apply the parking brake.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Fast Restart

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open

and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## Starting System Information Messages

| Message                         | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Full accessory power active     | Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.                                                                                                                                              |
| Press brake to start            | Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.                                                                                                                                 |
| Press clutch to start           | Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal.                                                                                                                                |
| Press brake and clutch to start | Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals.                                                                                                                     |
| Cranking time exceeded          | Displays if the engine fails to start.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| No key detected                 | Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.                                                                                                                                                      |
| Starting system malfunction     | Displays if you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                 |
| Restart now or key is needed    | Displays for 10 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key. |

## Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

## Locking the Steering Wheel

1. Remove the key from the ignition.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

**Note:** You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that automatically operates.

The steering wheel will lock shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it or when you lock your vehicle.

**Note:** The steering wheel will not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

**Note:** You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

**Note:** You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

5. Turn the key to position **III** and wait until the engine stops cranking.
6. Release the accelerator pedal.
7. Start the engine.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a push button ignition switch, the engine shuts down if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing

a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Switching off the automatic engine shutdown in the information display.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

## Switching the Automatic Engine Shutdown On or Off

**To switch the automatic engine shutdown on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item        | Action                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings         | Press the menu button.      |
| Vehicle settings | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| 30min max idle   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting System Information Messages

| Message                     | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Full accessory power active | Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.                                                                                                                                   |
| Cranking time exceeded      | Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked. |
| Starting system malfunction | Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                    |

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
3. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

4. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.

**Note:** When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

### Failure to Start

#### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

#### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Turn the key to position **0**.
4. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Starting System Information Messages

| Message                     | Action                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Full accessory power active | Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.                                                                                                                |
| Cranking time exceeded      | Displays if your vehicle fails to start.                                                                                                                                           |
| Starting system malfunction | Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
3. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

4. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.

**Note:** When the temperature is below -15°C (5°F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

### Failure to Start

#### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.

3. Apply the parking brake.

## Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 129).

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Starting System Information Messages

| Message                     | Action                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Full accessory power active | Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.                                                                                                                |
| Cranking time exceeded      | Displays if your vehicle fails to start.                                                                                                                                           |
| Starting system malfunction | Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles With a Turbocharger



**WARNING:** Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

The heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220–240 volt AC electrical source.

**Note:** *The heater is most effective when the ambient temperature is below -18°C (0°F).*

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for outdoor use and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Make sure that you park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Make sure that you firmly connect the heater, heater cord and extension cord.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

- Make sure that you unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the terminals of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure that you check the heater system for proper operation before winter.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry before use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It reaches maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.



# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP-MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always switch the ignition off and fully apply the parking brake before carrying out any maintenance or leaving your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death if the engine restarts.

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If you have selected certain drive modes, for example sport.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum A/C or maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

**Note:** *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

### Using Auto-Start-Stop

#### Stopping the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

#### Restarting the Engine

Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

**Note:** *The system provides stall recovery. To restart the engine after stalling, fully press the clutch pedal.*

### Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

**Note:** *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

**Note:** The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the system has stopped the engine.

## Information Messages

| Message                                       | Condition                                                                              | Action                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine  | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.                 | Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal. |
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required        | The system is not functioning.                                                         | Restart the engine.                                       |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine.                |

## Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

## AUTO-START-STOP - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If you have shifted into manual (M).
- If your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.
- If you have turned the steering more than 270 degrees.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

**Note:** *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

## Using Auto-Start-Stop

### Stopping the Engine

Stop your vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *The engine stops if you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

### Restarting the Engine

- Release the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal.
- Shift into drive (D), reverse (R) or manual (M).

## Switching the System On and Off

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

**Note:** The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Information Messages

| Message                                    | Condition                                                              | Action                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.         |
| Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine   | The system is not functioning.                                         | Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself. |

## Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

## EcoSelect Indicator



Illuminates when you switch EcoSelect on.

## ECOSELECT

### About EcoSelect

EcoSelect is a drive mode that is designed to help you reduce fuel consumption. It changes the way that some vehicle systems operate to make your vehicle more efficient.

When you drive with EcoSelect switched on, you could notice:

- Changes in engine behavior.
- Reduced acceleration performance.
- Reduced blower motor speed.

### Switching EcoSelect On and Off



Press the button.

**Note:** It remains on until you switch it off.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY - E85

### Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system. Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

# Fuel and Refueling

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).



Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

**Note:** *When using E85, your vehicle may have higher fuel consumption.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuels containing more than 85% ethanol or E100 fuel.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

**Note:** *Flex fuel vehicles can be fueled with gasoline, ethanol or a mixture of both.*

Following a refuel, if the ethanol content of the fuel is different than what you used previously, we recommend that you drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 8 km (5 mi) to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

- Short stops do not affect the process.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Always observe speed limits and road conditions.

The engine control module needs to adapt to the fuel in the tank, especially when refueling more than half a tank.

If you do not follow this procedure, you may experience a minor degradation in engine starting performance and slight fluctuations in engine speed at idle. Until you complete the fuel learning process, these symptoms may continue.

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that contains low ethanol (E10) if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE



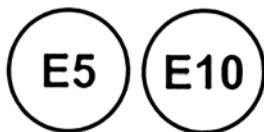
**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



**WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

# Fuel and Refueling

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

## Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Fuel and Refueling

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 147).

**Note:** *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

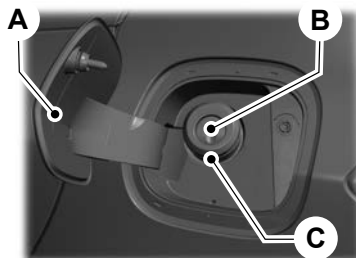


# Fuel and Refueling



## REFUELING

### Refueling System Overview



3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

# Fuel and Refueling



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

## Refueling Your Vehicle

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

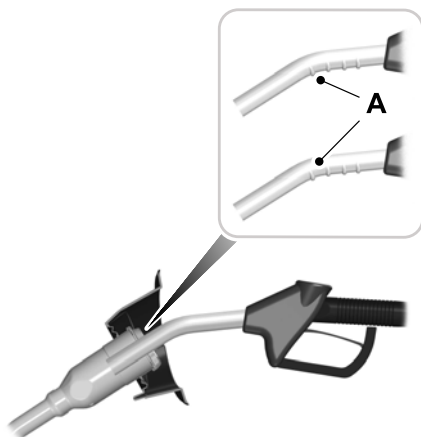
**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

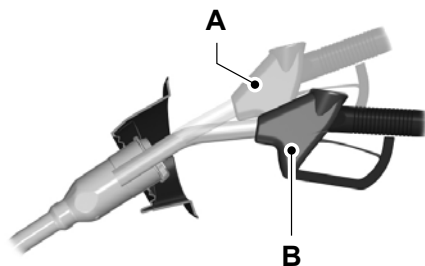
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

# Fuel and Refueling

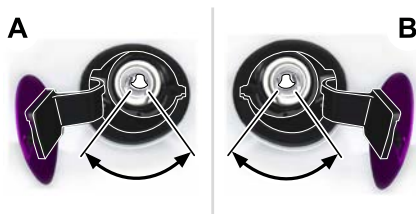


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

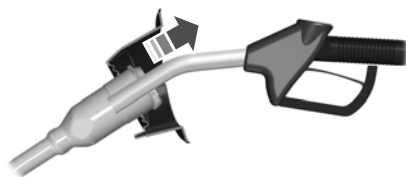


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

| Message               |
|-----------------------|
| Check fuel fill inlet |

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

# Fuel and Refueling

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 147). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 295).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

## Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page 86).

The first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km (2,000 mi).

## Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 280).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 147).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER - GASOLINE



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 237).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.

- Do not use leaded fuel.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 80).

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTANT SYSTEM

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reductant system. This reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system. The engine does not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reductant system.

For the system to correctly operate, you must maintain the fluid level.

# Engine Emission Control

**Note:** When you switch the engine off the selective catalytic reductant system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

## AdBlue® Guidelines

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank



E204215

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

## Filling in Cold Climates

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

# Engine Emission Control

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump



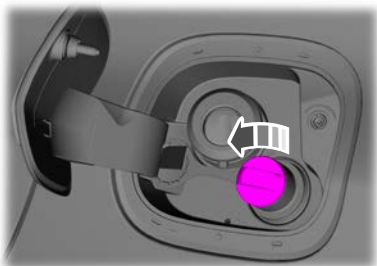
**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

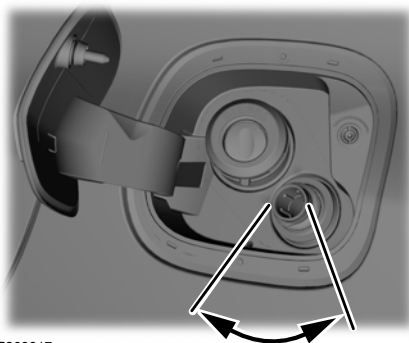
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



E268809

2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



E268817

4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

**Note:** The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container



**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

# Engine Emission Control

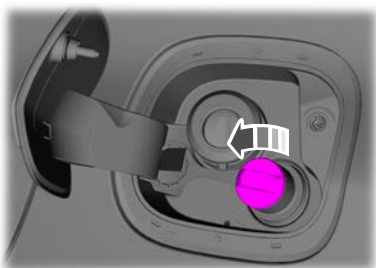


**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue®) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



E268809

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

**Note:** The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Checking the AdBlue® Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **DEF gauge**.

## Checking the AdBlue® Level Status

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **DEF level**.

## AdBlue® Consumption

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 5% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.



# Engine Emission Control

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages

### AdBlue® Level

| Message                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AdBlue® low Range :<br>XXXX km Refill soon<br><br>AdBlue® low Range :<br>XXXX mls Refill soon | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                        |
| AdBlue® low No engine<br>start in XXXX km<br><br>AdBlue® low No engine<br>start in XXXX mls   | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.                                                                           |
| AdBlue® level empty.<br>Refill to start engine                                                | The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. See <b>Information Displays</b> (page 84). |

**Note:** When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

# Engine Emission Control

## AdBlue® Malfunction

| Message                                                                                 | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AdBlue® system malfunction Service required                                             | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                           |
| AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km<br>AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls | Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system Service required to start engine                                         | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                           |

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

# Engine Emission Control

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

| Message                                    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul> |
| Exhaust filter over limit Service now      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>                                                                                                          |

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

# Engine Emission Control



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle when the warning lamp is illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 80).

## Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

**Note:** This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.

# Engine Emission Control

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, an information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.



If the warning lamp illuminates the diesel particulate filter could have become overloaded. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*

# Engine Emission Control

## Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, an information message appears in the information display advising you to initiate diesel particulate filter manual regeneration.

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Park your vehicle outside of any enclosed structure.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Park your vehicle a minimum of 3 m (10 ft) from any obstructions and materials that can easily combust or melt, for example, paper, leaves, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.

- Make sure there is a minimum of 12 L (2.6 gal) of fuel in the fuel tank.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the engine coolant level.

### Manual Regeneration

Where vehicle use has significant engine idle operation, frequent vehicle speed less than 40 km/h (25 mph), or driving short distances where the engine does not fully warm up, manual regeneration allows you to start diesel particulate filter cleaning when the engine is idling.

Use the manual regeneration feature when:

- You are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic cleaning. The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. .
- You choose to manually start the regeneration process when the engine is idling.

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*

### Starting Manual Regeneration

You can only start manual regeneration with the engine running at normal operating temperature using the information display.

**Note:** *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

# Engine Emission Control

**Note:** *If you press any pedal during manual regeneration the engine may turn off. To protect the exhaust system you may not be able to restart the engine for 10 minutes.*

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **Exhaust filter**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.



If a warning illuminates you may not be able to start manual regeneration.

When you start manual regeneration the engine speed rises to approximately 2000–2500 rpm and the cooling fan speed increases. A change in engine noise due to the cooling fan and engine speed increase may be heard during the regeneration process.

Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, the regeneration process varies depending on the outside air temperature and altitude. Manual regeneration may last up to 40 minutes.

When manual regeneration is complete the cooling fan and engine speed return to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool.

## **Interrupting or Cancelling Manual Regeneration**

You can interrupt or cancel manual regeneration by switching the engine off. It may be possible to interrupt or cancel manual regeneration by pressing any pedal.

**Note:** *To protect the exhaust system you may not be able to restart the engine for 10 minutes.*

Depending on the amount of time allowed for manual regeneration to operate, soot may not have had sufficient time to be eliminated. The exhaust system may still be very hot for several minutes after regeneration.

If you switch the engine off during manual regeneration, turbo charger flutter occurs. This is a consequence of switching a diesel engine off during turbo charger boost operation, which is normal.

# Engine Emission Control

## Diesel Particulate Filter Information Messages

| Message                                    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul> |
| Exhaust filter over limit Service now      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>                                                                                                          |



# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

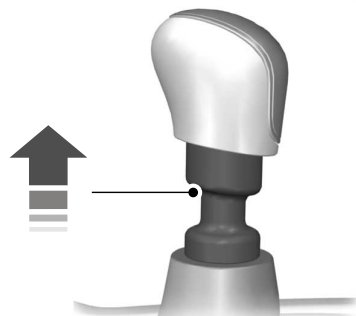
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

### Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

### Selector Lever Positions

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

# Transmission

## Park (P)

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

## Reverse (R)

Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

## Neutral (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

## Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal position for driving.

## Manual (M)

In manual (M), you can upshift or downshift using the buttons on the selector lever.

## SelectShift™

### About SelectShift™

Use this feature to upshift or downshift using the buttons on the selector lever.

### Using SelectShift™

Shift into manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Press the **+** button to upshift.
- Press the **–** button to downshift.

Shift into another gear to switch the feature off.

## Brake Shift Interlock

### About Brake Shift Interlock

Brake shift interlock prevents you from shifting out of park (P) when you have switched the ignition on and not pressed the brake pedal.

## Shifting Out of Park (P)



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

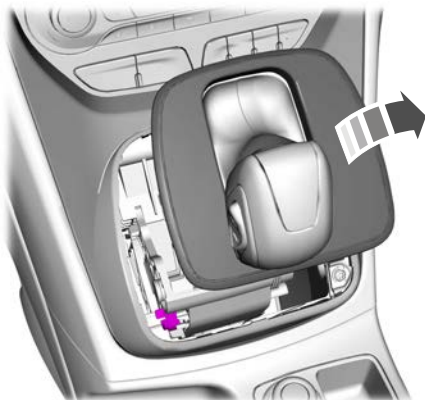
In the event of an electrical malfunction, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the stoplamps are not working. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 242).

If the vehicle battery has no charge, jump start your vehicle. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 237).



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

# Transmission



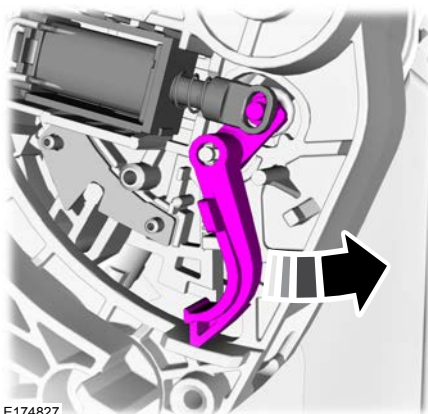
E275061

1. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, remove the panel.



E142627

2. Locate the brake shift interlock lever.



E174827

3. Push the brake shift interlock lever toward the rear of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

**Note:** Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 265).

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

## PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

# Brakes

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

## PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.

**Note:** Do not press the release button when pulling the parking brake lever upward.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

To release the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.

2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

## HILL START ASSIST



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Parking Brake** (page 168).



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle once the system activates. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically

once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system will turn on automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed. If equipped with a manual transmission, also press the clutch pedal.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two to three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

## Switching the System On and Off

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL



**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

## Switching Traction Control On or Off



Press the button on the center console.

**Note:** The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, stability control remains on.

**Note:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

## Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the system off.

## Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

### Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

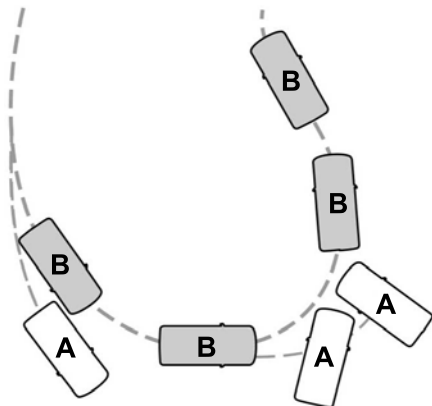


# Stability Control

## Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See

**Using Traction Control** (page 171).



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control system off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the system deactivates.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 171).

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 45).

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 84).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## REAR PARKING AID



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** Some add-on accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.



Sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (70 in) from the rear bumper.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.

### Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides object distance indication through the information display.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

## Rear Parking Aid Information Messages

| Message                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Park Pilot malfunction                                     | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Check Park Pilot                                           | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Check rear Park Pilot                                      | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Rear Park Pilot not available<br>Sensor blocked See manual | A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## FRONT PARKING AID

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 8 km/h (5 mph).

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



Sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.



Press the parking aid button to switch the system off.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the information display.

### Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### Front Parking Aid Information Messages

| Message                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Park Pilot malfunction                                   | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Check Park Pilot                                         | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Check front Park Pilot                                   | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                        |
| Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual | A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

### SIDE SENSING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover up the sensors.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

**Note:** *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).



The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

**Note:** The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.

## Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides a visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Active park assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until the parking maneuver is complete.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the active park assist button.

Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using active park assist.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover up the sensors.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves. The sensors may falsely detect objects due to ultrasonic interference caused by, for example motorcycle exhausts, truck air brakes or horns.*

**Note:** *If you change any tires, the system must recalibrate and may not correctly operate for a short time.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are incorrectly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow, fog, high humidity and high temperatures.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached an add-on accessory close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You have attached an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- The front bumper, rear bumper or the side sensors are damaged.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

### Using Active Park Assist

#### Selecting an Active Park Assist Mode



Press the button once to activate parallel parking. Press the button a second time to activate perpendicular parking. If you press the button again the system switches off.

If your vehicle is parked and after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information display to toggle through the modes. Press the button to switch the system on and open the system menu in the information display.

**Note:** If your vehicle is parked, the default mode is parallel park out assist. However if you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, use the information display to select park out assist.

**Note:** You can only repeatedly press the active park assist button to toggle through the modes after moving your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).

To toggle through the modes, use the buttons on the information display to select the following:

- Parallel parking.
- Perpendicular parking.
- Parallel park out assist.
- Switch the system off.

**Note:** There is no time limit for toggling through the modes.

#### Parallel Parking

The system detects available parallel parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a parallel parking space.



Press the button once to search for a parking space.

**Note:** You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the active park assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h (22 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to be offered parking spaces on either the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

**Note:** The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

**Note:** The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 35 km/h (22 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

### Automatically Steering into a Parallel Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

**Note:** You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

### Brake System Intervention

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied at a vehicle speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph). This feature attempts to keep the vehicle speed within the limits for assisted parking. Brake system intervention to slow your vehicle does not cancel the active park assist maneuver.
- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.

### Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Perpendicular Parking

The system detects available perpendicular parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button twice to search for a parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to be offered parking spaces on either the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

**Note:** The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

**Note:** The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

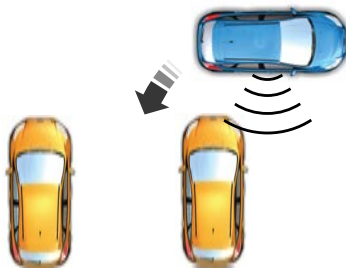
**Note:** If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

### Automatically Steering into a Perpendicular Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



E186191

When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the active park assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and a message appears.

**Note:** You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

### Brake System Intervention

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied at a vehicle speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph). This feature attempts to keep the vehicle speed within the limits for assisted parking. Brake system intervention to slow your vehicle does not cancel the active park assist maneuver.
- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.

### Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Parallel Park Out Assist

The system steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you out of a parallel parking space.

**Note:** *This system is not intended to assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space.*



Press the button once when your vehicle is stationary in a parallel parking space.

**Note:** *If you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, pressing the button once selects parallel park. You must use the information display to select park out assist.*

The system displays a message instructing you to switch a direction indicator on. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## Brake System Intervention

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.



After the system directs your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle. Generally hand-over is when your vehicle is still inside the parking space.

**Note:** *Parallel Park Out Assist may not be available when the clearance to the front or the rear of your vehicle is too small.*

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.*

**Note:** *You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.*

## Troubleshooting

| Symptom                                         | Possible Cause                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The system does not search for a parking space. | You may have switched the traction control off.                                                                          |
|                                                 | The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.            |
| The system does not offer a parking space.      | The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions. |
|                                                 | There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.                                           |
|                                                 | There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.                            |
|                                                 | The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.                                              |

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

| Symptom                                                                 | Possible Cause                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                         | The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.                           |
|                                                                         | You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time. |
| The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space. | Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position. For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).                     |
|                                                                         | An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.                                                           |
|                                                                         | Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.                                                                                          |
|                                                                         | Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.                                                                                                          |
|                                                                         | The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.                            |
|                                                                         | A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.                                                                                                    |
|                                                                         | A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.                                                            |
|                                                                         | The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.                                                           |
|                                                                         | The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.                    |

## REAR VIEW CAMERA



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** The camera may not detect objects that are very close to your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



E165579



E165580

The image displays in the information display or the interior mirror.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light areas.
- If there is a sudden change to the outside temperature.
- If the camera is wet.
- If the camera is obstructed.

### Using the Display



**WARNING:** Objects in the display are closer than they appear.



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Distance markers are only a guide and are calculated for unloaded vehicles on an even road surface.

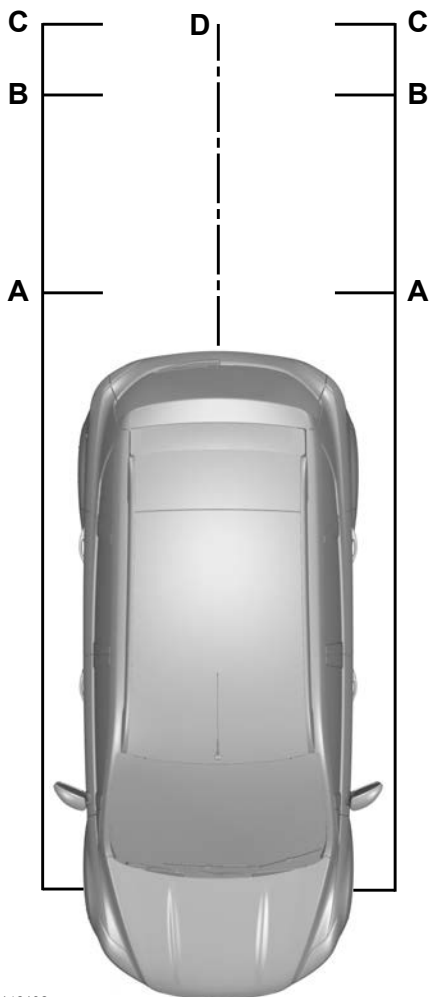
The lines show a projected vehicle path and the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

### Switching the Rear View Camera On

Switch the ignition and the audio unit on.  
Shift into reverse (R).



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



C Green zone.

D Center line of the projected vehicle path.

**Note:** When reversing with a trailer the camera shows the direction of your vehicle and not the direction of the trailer.

**Note:** When reversing with a trailer the screen does not display the lines.

### Switching the Rear View Camera Off

The image turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).

### Rear View Camera Delay

You cannot switch the rear view camera delay off.

**Note:** The system automatically turns off when your vehicle speed has reached approximately 12 km/h (7.5 mph).

**Note:** The interior mirror does not have the rear view camera delay feature.

### Vehicles With Parking Aid (If Equipped)

The display shows colored distance bars.

E142132

A Red zone.

B Amber zone.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



E142437

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

**Note:** Cruise control disengages if your vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed when driving uphill.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator appears in the information display.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 2 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Pull and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Pull and release **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

# Cruise Control

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system helps you to maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press and release the switch.

The system is now in standby.



E260516

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

# Cruise Control

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.

**SET+** Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

## Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

The system may provide slight temporary acceleration when you use your driver side direction indicator while following a vehicle to aid passing the vehicle.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- A new gap distance is set.

The system applies the brakes to slow the vehicle to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front. The system applies only limited maximum braking. Press the brake pedal to override the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display when the system continues to brake. You must take immediate action.

## Setting the Gap Distance

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press and release to decrease the gap distance.



Press and release to increase the gap distance.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

# Cruise Control



E249552

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

## Adaptive cruise control, distance between vehicle settings

| Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles | Distance gap | Dynamic behavior |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1                                                | Closest.     | Sport.           |
| 2                                                | Close.       | Normal.          |
| 3                                                | Medium.      | Normal.          |
| 4                                                | Furthest.    | Comfort.         |

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Overriding the System



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

## Changing the Set Speed



Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.



Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

The set speed changes in small increments.

**Note:** Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to change the set speed in larger increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Canceling the Set Speed



Press and release the switch or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

# Cruise Control

**Note:** If you press the clutch pedal for an extended period, this action also cancels the set speed.

## Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press and release the switch.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed shows continuously in the information display while the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## Automatic Cancellation

The system is not functional at vehicle speeds below 20 km/h (12 mph). An audible alarm sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, the information display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

## Hilly Condition Usage

**Note:** An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled.

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press and release the switch.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

## Detection Issues



**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

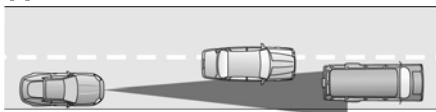


**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar has a limited field of view. It does not detect all vehicles in all situations and could detect vehicles later than you expect. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

# Cruise Control

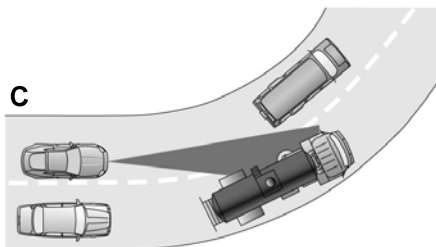
A



B



C



Detection issues can occur:

- A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.
- B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.
- C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam does not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## System Not Available

The system may not turn on if there is:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

## Blocked Sensor



E244279

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is behind the grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor, it is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

# Cruise Control

| Cause                                                                                    | Action                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.               | Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.                                         |
| The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.                | Wait a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction. |
| Heavy rain or snow interfere with the radar signals.                                     | Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.                            |
| Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road interfere with the radar signals. | Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.                            |
| You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.       | Wait a short period of time or switch to normal cruise control.                                                    |

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Due to the nature of radar technology, you may get a blocked sensor warning when no obstruction blocks your sensor. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears or clears after a key cycle.



The gap setting does not display and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to cruise control using the information display.



## SPEED LIMITER

### Principle of Operation

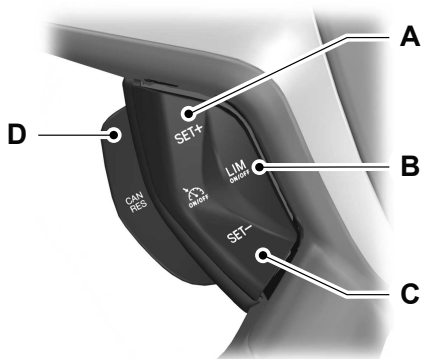


**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the System

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E133198

- A Set speed increase
- B On and off
- C Set speed decrease
- D Cancel and resume

**Note:** The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.

### Switching the System On and Off

Press switch B. The information display will prompt you to set a speed.

### Setting the Speed Limit

Press switch A or C with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.

Press switch A or C to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch D to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm this has been turned off by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch D again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily switch the system off. The system will turn on once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator flashes in the information display and a warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator flashes in the information display.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system. For example, if the traffic sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

**Note:** The system does not detect speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.

### Using Intelligent Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching the System On and Off

**LIM**

Press to set the system in standby mode. The system prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

### Setting the Speed Limiter

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the information

**SET-**

display.

**Note:** The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

**Note:** If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

### Canceling the Set Speed

**CAN**

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

### Resuming the Set Speed

**RES**

Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

# Driving Aids

## System Warnings

A warning appears in the information display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill. A tone also sounds.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you continue to exceed the set speed.

**Note:** If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Speed limiter.**
3. Select **Intelligent.**
4. Select **Tolerance.**
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## Switching from Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Speed limiter.**
3. Switch **Intelligent** off.

## DRIVER ALERT



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

# Driving Aids

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Driver Alert System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

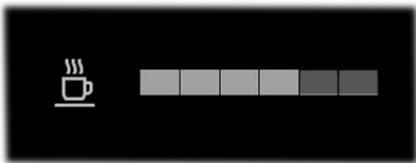
1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it.

**Note:** The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Driver Alert System Display

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Driver alert**.

Your calculated alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar. The bar travels from right to left as your calculated alertness level decreases.



E249476

Your calculated alertness level is good.



E249477

Your calculated alertness level is low. You should stop your vehicle and take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

Your calculated alertness level shows in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Switching Driver Alert On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

## Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

# Driving Aids

## Driver Alert System Messages

| Message                                  | Action                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Driver fatigue warning<br>Rest suggested | Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels. |
| Driver fatigue warning<br>Rest now       | Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.              |

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph). You can view the system status in the information display.

**Note:** *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).

# Driving Aids

- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## Switching Lane Keeping System On and Off



E270719

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk.

## Lane Keeping System Settings

The system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.

### Alert Mode

Provides steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Lane keeping system.**
3. Select **Intensity.**
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

**Note:** This setting does not affect the aid mode.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## Adjusting the Lane Keeping System Sensitivity

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Lane keeping system.**
3. Select **Sensitivity.**
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

### Aid Mode

Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

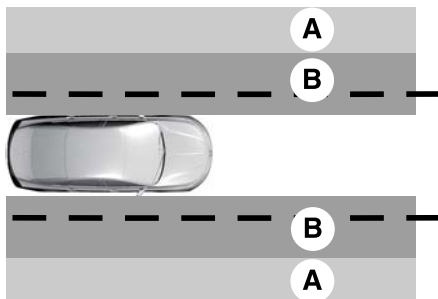
**Note:** When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

**Note:** The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

# Driving Aids

## Alert and Aid Mode

Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert mode.

B Aid mode.

**Note:** The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

## Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.

2. Select **Lane keeping system**.

3. Select **Mode**.

4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## Lane Keeping System Display



When the system is off, the system indicator or the lane markings do not display.

## Lane Keeping System Indicators



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Alert Mode is selected.

## Black and White Information Display

| Indicator           | System Status                                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gray.               | Unavailable.                                                |
| White.              | Available.                                                  |
| White and inverted. | Temporary steering assistance.                              |
| White and flashing. | Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration. |

# Driving Aids

## Color Information Display

| Indicator | System Status                                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gray.     | Unavailable.                                                |
| Green.    | Available.                                                  |
| Amber.    | Temporary steering assistance.                              |
| Red.      | Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration. |

## Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp



It could illuminate when you switch the system off. If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Lane Keeping System Messages

| Message                                          | Action                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lane keeping system malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM



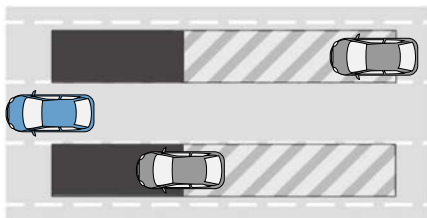
**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



# Driving Aids



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

## Using the Blind Spot Information System

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

## System Lights and Messages



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

# Driving Aids

**Note:** The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 86). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 84). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

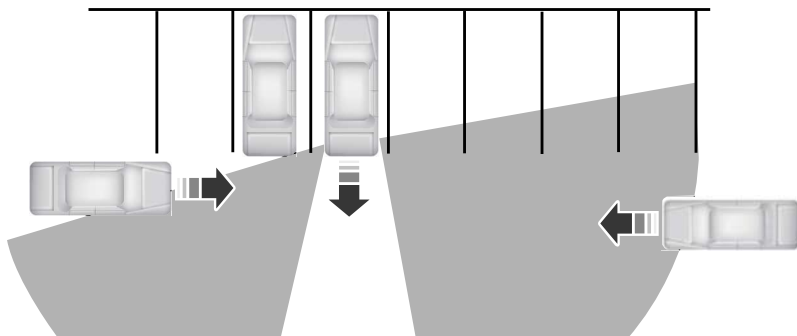
## Using Cross Traffic Alert

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h (4 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

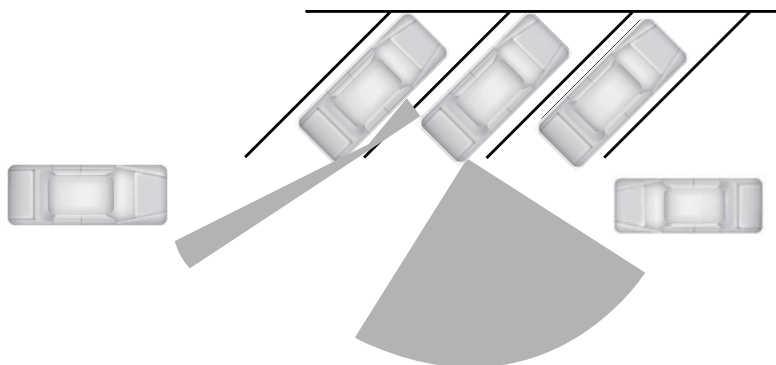
## Driving Aids

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The

system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



# Driving Aids

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

## Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

**Note:** If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

**Note:** If arrows do not display, a message appears in the information display.

If the system malfunctions, an indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

# Driving Aids

## Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages

| Message                                                  | Action                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cross traffic alert                                      | Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.                                                               |
| Cross traffic not available<br>Sensor blocked See manual | Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cross traffic malfunction                                | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                          |
| Cross traffic alert deactivated<br>Trailer attached      | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.                                                                                                                     |

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations. Detected traffic signs appear in the information display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

# Driving Aids

## Switching Speed Warning On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist.**
2. Select **Traffic sign recognition.**
3. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog..**
4. Select **Activate speed warning.**
5. Switch **Overspeed chime** on or off.

## Setting the Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist.**
2. Select **Traffic sign recognition.**
3. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog..**
4. Select **Activate speed warning.**
5. Select **Speed warning.**
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

## Traffic Sign Recognition System Messages

| Message                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Traffic sign recognition<br>Reduced performance<br>See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the information display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

**Note:** The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

### Using Speed Sign Recognition

#### Switching Speed Warning On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Traffic sign recognition.**
3. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog..**
4. Select **Activate speed warning.**
5. Switch **Overspeed chime** on or off.

#### Setting the System Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Traffic sign recognition.**
3. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog..**
4. Select **Activate speed warning.**
5. Select **Speed warning.**
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

# Driving Aids

## Speed Sign Recognition System Display



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the information display.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.*

## Speed Sign Recognition System Messages

| Message                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Traffic sign recognition<br>Reduced performance<br>See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## ECO

### Eco Mode

#### How Does Eco Mode Work

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Driving Economically** (page 234).

**Note:** *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 152).*

**Note:** *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

### Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

#### Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

### Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.



# Driving Aids

**Note:** Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

## Viewing the Trip Summary

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

## Efficient Drive Mode

### What Is Efficient Drive Mode

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that provides near real-time traffic information to help you drive more efficiently by releasing the accelerator pedal.

### Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch **Eco advice** on and off.

### Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.

The display ring can provide information about speed limit, freeway ramp, slope, curve, crosswalk, etc.

### Efficient Drive Mode Indicator



It indicates that you have to slowly decelerate.

## Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for both last and current trips.

**Note:** Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

### Viewing the trip summary

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the **OK** button.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

# Driving Aids

**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph). Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

**Note:** The system is not designed to detect animals.

**Note:** The system is not designed to detect vehicles or cyclists that are traveling in a different direction.



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle, a vehicle or cyclist traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

| Level of Functionality                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alert                                                     | When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Brake support                                             | The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal. |
| Active braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.                                                                                                                                                                         |

# Driving Aids

| Level of Functionality                                 | Description                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                        | The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph).                                                                       |
| Active braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. |

**To switch active braking on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item            | Action                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Driver assist.       | Press the menu button.      |
| Pre-collision Assist | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Active braking       | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## Distance Alert

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

## Distance Alert Sensitivity Settings

**To adjust the distance alert sensitivity settings, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item            | Action                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Driver assist.       | Press the menu button.                                                                                                              |
| Pre-collision Assist | Press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                                                         |
| Alert sensitivity    | Press the <b>OK</b> button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## Distance Indication

A graphical indication displays the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

# Driving Aids

| Vehicle Speed        | System Sensitivity | Distance Indicator Color | Distance Gap                  | Time Gap                  |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 100 km/h<br>(62 mph) | Normal.            | Gray.                    | Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) . | Greater than 0.9 seconds. |
|                      |                    | Yellow.                  | 17–25 m<br>(55.8–82.0 ft)     | 0.6–0.9 seconds.          |
|                      |                    | Red.                     | Less than 17 m<br>(55.8 ft).  | Less than 0.6 seconds.    |

## Switching Distance Indication On or Off

**To switch distance indication on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item            | Action                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Driver assist.       | Press the menu button.      |
| Pre-collision Assist | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| Distance indication  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

## Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors

### Vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

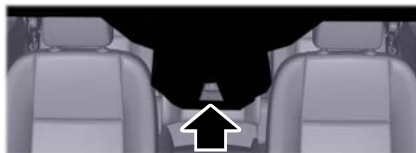
**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

### Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

## Driving Aids

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

### Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

### Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages

| Message                                           | Action                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pre-collision assist not available                | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                 |
| Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked | The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Driving Aids

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message may display.**

| <b>Cause</b>                                                                           | <b>Action</b>                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.                | Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.                                                         |
| The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.              | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.                |
| Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.                 | The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve. |
| The radar is misaligned.                                                               | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                                                     |
| The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.                          | Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.                                                                        |
| The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.                |
| Excessive heat around the camera.                                                      | Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.                        |

# Local Hazard Information

---

## WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 304).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

## CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



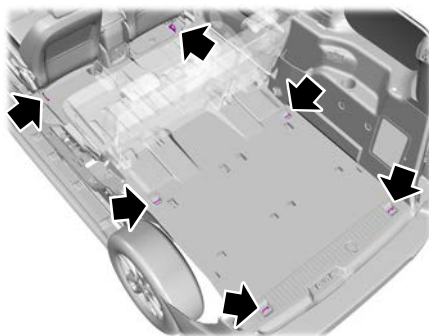
**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E167350



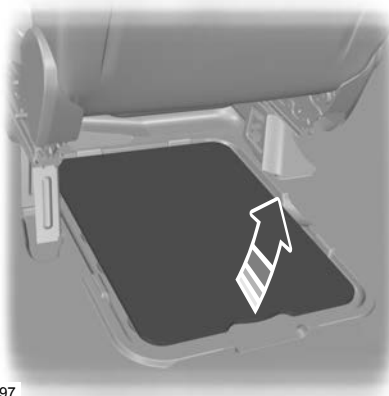


# Load Carrying

| Maximum Load Value |
|--------------------|
| 3,000 N (675 lb)   |

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

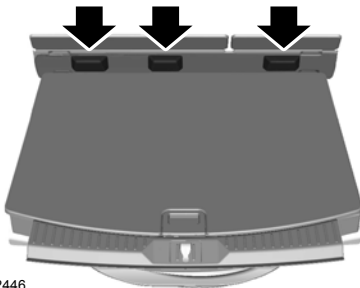
### Passenger Compartment Floor (If Equipped)



E78097

The under floor storage compartment is located behind the front passenger seat.

### Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)



E142446

Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

## CARGO NETS

### Installing the Net (If Equipped)

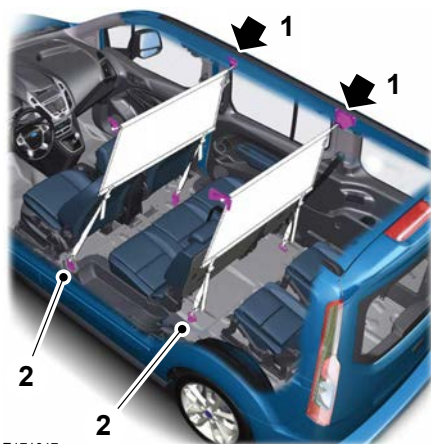


**WARNING:** Always attach and tighten the net to the luggage anchor points and do not put more than 10 kg (22 lb) of cargo behind the net and above the seat back. Otherwise, the net could fail and cargo could become a projectile, which could cause serious injury.



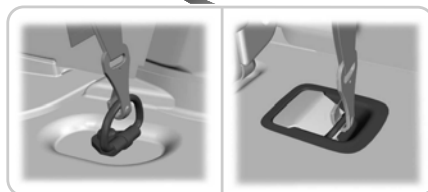
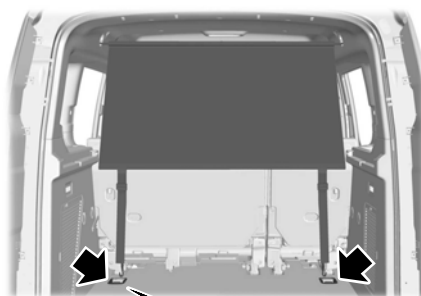
**WARNING:** Do not allow people to ride in the third row seating positions when the cargo net is installed behind the second row. Failure to do so may limit egress from the vehicle in an emergency.

## Load Carrying



E171017

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers in the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

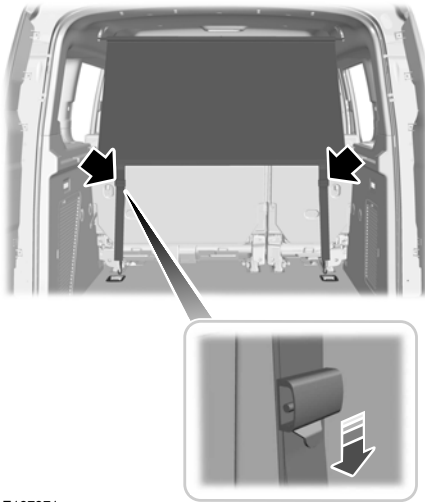


E167370

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 220).

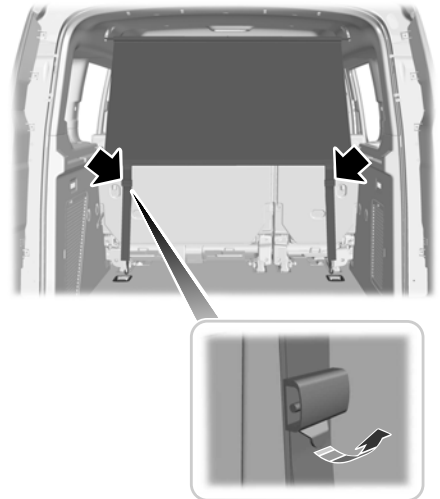
# Load Carrying

## Removing the Net



E167371

3. Tighten the straps.



E167372

1. Release the straps.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

# Load Carrying



**WARNING:** When loading the roof rack we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with high centers of gravity handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, use slower speeds and increased stopping distances. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford genuine accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

**Note:** If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

**Note:** Never place loads directly on the roof panel.

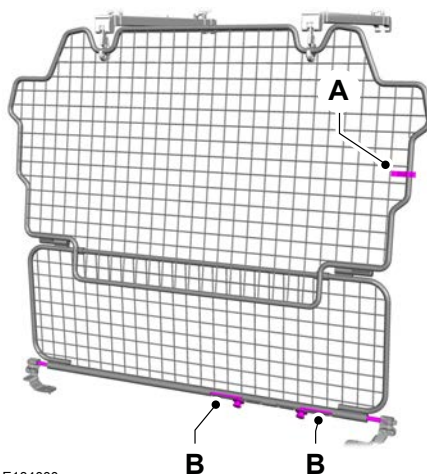
## Maximum Load Weights

**Do not exceed the following maximum roof rack load weights.**

| Variant    | Maximum Load kg (lb)* |
|------------|-----------------------|
| Kombi      | 75 (165)              |
| Van        | 100 (220)             |
| Double Cab | 100 (220)             |

\*Evenly distribute the load on the roof rack.

## FOLDING BULKHEAD



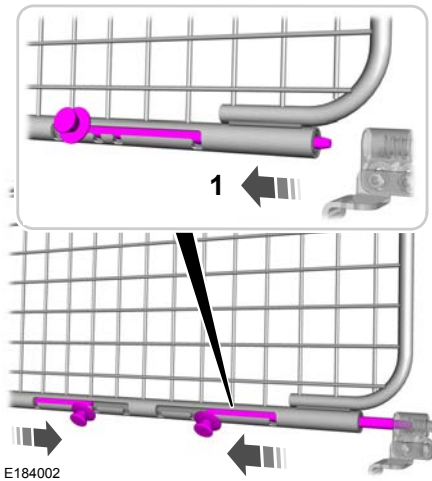
E184000

- A Folded position stay clip.  
B Locking pins.

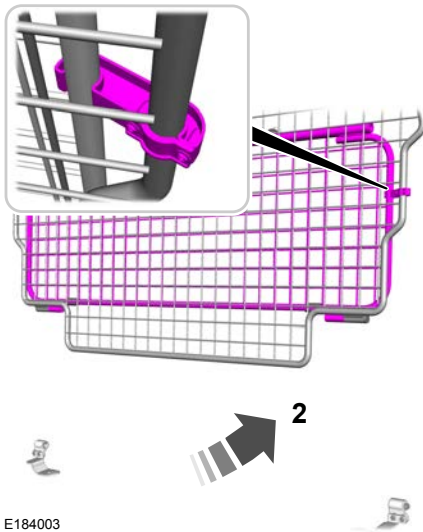
## Moving the Folding Bulkhead to the Forward Position

1. Fold the second row seat backrests down. See **Rear Seats** (page 117).

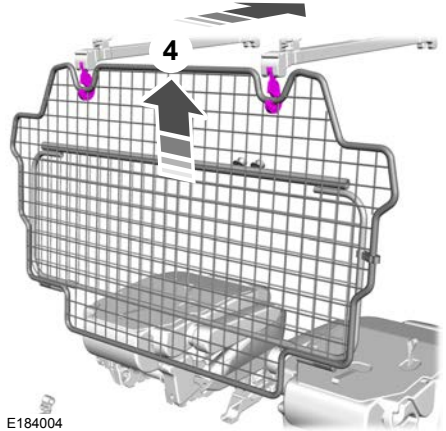
# Load Carrying



2. Slide the locking pins toward the center of your vehicle.

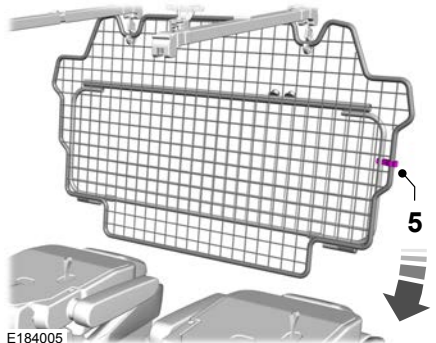


3. Fold the lower half of the folding bulkhead up. Use the folded position stay clip to secure it in place.



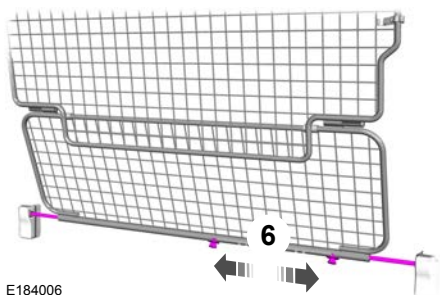
4. Lift the folding bulkhead up and slide it forward. Make sure that you locate it in the forward securing points.

**Note:** Tilt the folding bulkhead so that it slides in place free from obstruction.



5. Disengage the folded position stay clip and unfold the lower half of the folding bulkhead down.

# Load Carrying



6. Slide the locking pins toward the outside of your vehicle. Make sure that you fully engage the catches.

## Moving the Folding Bulkhead Back to the Rearward Position

1. Slide the locking pins toward the center of your vehicle.
2. Fold the lower half of the folding bulkhead up. Use the folded position stay clip to secure it in place.
3. Lift the folding bulkhead up and slide it backward. Make sure that you locate it in the rearward securing points.

**Note:** *Tilt the folding bulkhead so that it slides in place free from obstruction.*

4. Disengage the folded position stay clip and unfold the lower half of the folding bulkhead down.
5. Slide the locking pins toward the outside of your vehicle. Make sure that you fully engage the catches.
6. Unfold the second row seat backrests. See **Rear Seats** (page 117).

## TOWING A TRAILER



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 228).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep slope.

**Note:** We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

**Note:** The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behaviour to the load of the trailer.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

# Towing

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290). See **Load Carrying** (page 220).

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

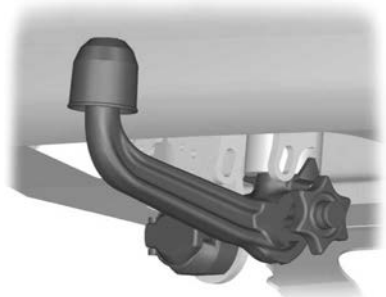
**Note:** *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

## TOW BALL

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.



E71328

## Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

**WARNING:** Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

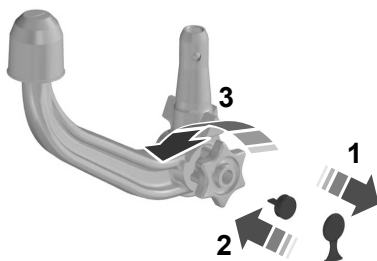
You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. We recommend that you securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.



# Towing

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.

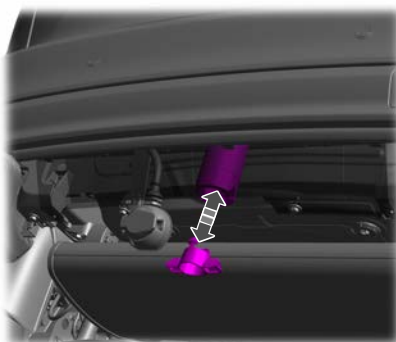
Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.



1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and fully turn it counterclockwise until it clicks.

**Note:** The red mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



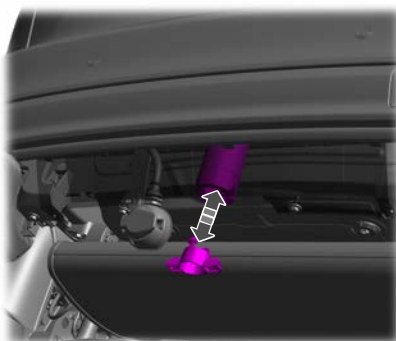
E265433

7. Insert the blanking plug.

## Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

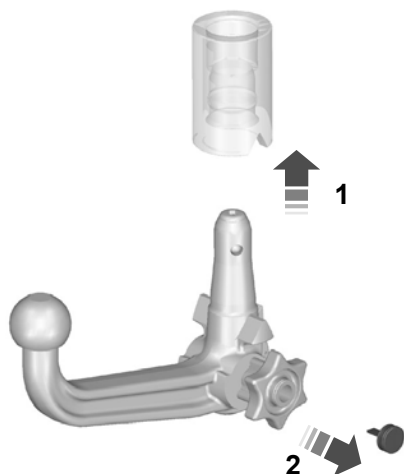
Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

**Note:** You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.



E265433

# Towing



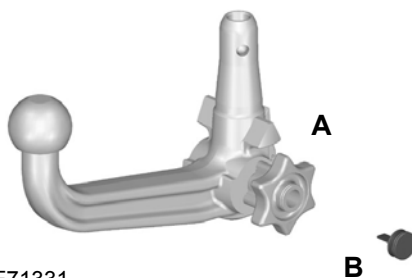
E71330

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

**Note:** Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

**Note:** The green mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
4. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



E71331

Check the following:

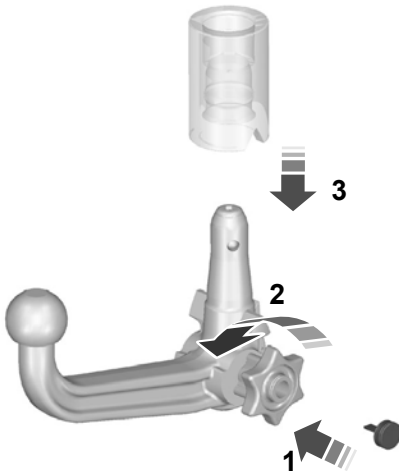
- The green mark on the handwheel is within the green line on the tow ball arm.
- The handwheel (A) is locked.
- You have removed the key (B).

**Note:** If any of these cannot be met, do not use the tow ball arm. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

# Towing



1. Remove the protective cap. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it counterclockwise against the stop.
3. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
4. Release the handwheel.
5. Insert the blanking plug.

## Quickly Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

When the tow ball arm is quickly detached, it can be quickly reattached.

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

**Note:** Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

**Note:** The green mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

## Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil. Lubricate the lock with graphite.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

# Towing



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



**WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



**WARNING:** When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 239).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 231).

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



**WARNING:** You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



**WARNING:** Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

## Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground.

# Towing

---

You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 165).
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the recovery hook that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 239).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

**Note:** *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.

- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

## Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

### FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flasher switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

### Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

**Note:** All direction indicators flash.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

### Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## FIRST AID KIT

Space is provided in the overhead console or lower door bins.

## WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the overhead console or lower door bins.

## FUEL SHUTOFF



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, your vehicle is fitted with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should the engine turn off after a crash, you may restart the engine by carrying out the following.

### Ignition Switch

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch the ignition to position **III**.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Switch the ignition on again to re-enable the fuel pump.

**Note:** Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. If your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.

### Keyless Starting (If Equipped)

1. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
2. Press the brake pedal, and then press and release the button once.
3. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
4. Press the brake pedal and then press the button until the engine starts.



# Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. If your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**WARNING:** Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

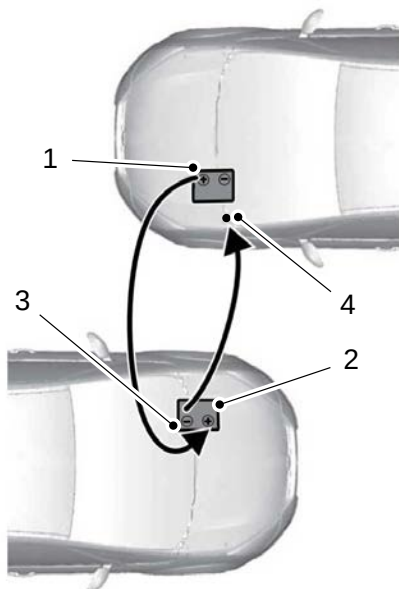
**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch, and switch off all accessories.

## Connecting the Jumper Cables

**WARNING:** Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

**Note:** In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



# Roadside Emergencies

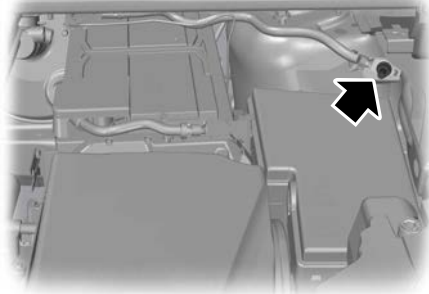
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. After starting the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

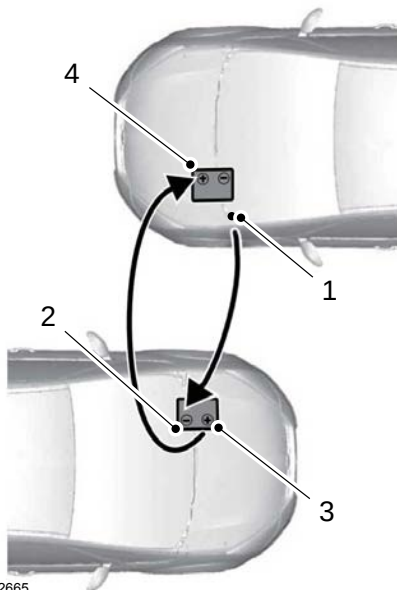
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E130431



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.



E142665

# Roadside Emergencies

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After starting your vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow it to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

## TOWING POINTS

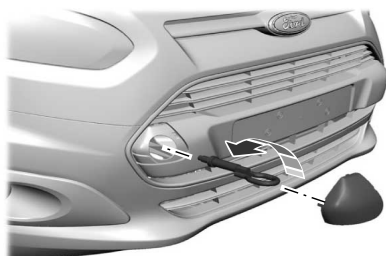
### Front Towing Point



**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E165018

1. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Install the towing eye.

**Note:** It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

### Rear Towing Point



**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

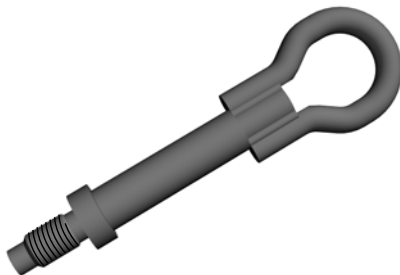


E165019

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

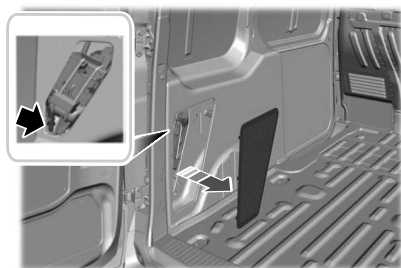
**Note:** It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

### Towing Eye Location



# Roadside Emergencies

---



E165020

The towing eye is in the luggage compartment on the left-hand side.

**Note:** *You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.*

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

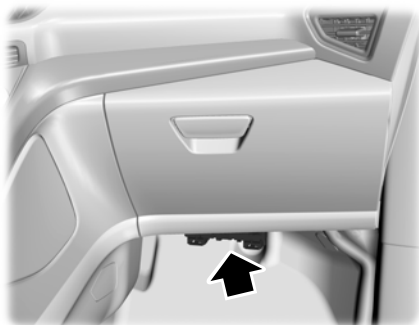
### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E272438

The fuse box is in the engine compartment.

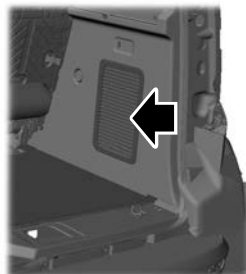
### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E159113

The fuse box is below the glove box.

### Trailer Tow Module



E272461

The fuse box is in the luggage compartment on the right-hand side.

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E272453

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                         |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 4             | 20 A        | Cooling fan.                                |
|               | 25 A        | Water-in-fuel sensor - diesel.              |
| 6             | 15 A        | Windshield wipers.                          |
| 7             | 15 A        | Windshield wipers.                          |
| 8             | 15 A        | Rear window washer pump.                    |
| 9             | 10 A        | Rear cargo door unlock.<br>Liftgate unlock. |
| 10            | 20 A        | Rear floor console auxiliary power point.   |
| 11            | 20 A        | Floor console auxiliary power point.        |

# Fuses

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                      |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 12            | 5 A         | Rain sensor.                                             |
| 13            | 20 A        | Rear window wiper.                                       |
| 16            | 20 A        | Sun shade.                                               |
| 17            | 15 A        | Steering column lock.                                    |
| 19            | 10 A        | Left-hand door unlock.                                   |
| 20            | 20 A        | Auxiliary power point.                                   |
| 21            | 20 A        | Rear auxiliary power points.                             |
| 22            | 5 A         | USB port.                                                |
| 25            | 20 A        | Dosing control unit - diesel.                            |
| 26            | 20 A        | Dosing control unit - diesel.                            |
| 27            | 15 A        | Dosing control unit - diesel.                            |
| 28            | 15 A        | Transmission control module - diesel.                    |
| 29            | 50 A        | Glow plugs - diesel.                                     |
| 31            | 20 A        | Right-hand low beam.                                     |
| 32            | 10 A        | Stoplamp switch.                                         |
| 33            | 30 A        | Driver power seat.                                       |
| 34            | 40 A        | Direct current/alternating current inverter.             |
| 35            | 50 A        | Glow plugs - diesel.                                     |
| 37            | 10 A        | Modified vehicle connection.                             |
| 38            | 10 A        | Data link connector.                                     |
| 39            | 20 A        | Fuel-operated parking heater.                            |
| 40            | 40 A        | Rear blower motor.                                       |
| 41            | 60 A        | Anti-lock brake system.<br>Electronic stability control. |
| 42            | 40 A        | Modified vehicle connection.                             |
| 43            | 15 A        | Status lamp - taxi.                                      |
| 44            | 5 A         | Headlamps.                                               |

# Fuses

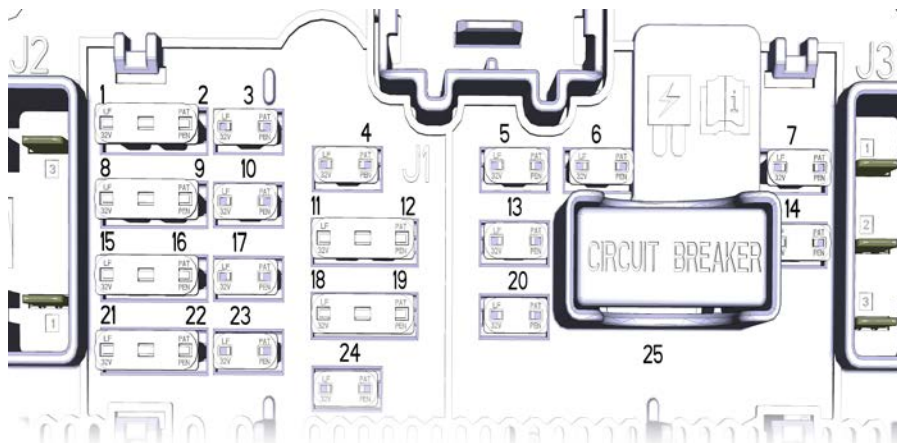
| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                                          |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 45            | 30 A        | Right-hand rear door module.                                                                 |
| 46            | 40 A        | Body control module.                                                                         |
| 47            | 40 A        | Trailer tow module.                                                                          |
| 48            | 20 A        | Heated seats.                                                                                |
| 49            | 20 A        | Left-hand low beam.                                                                          |
| 50            | 5 A         | Sun shade.                                                                                   |
| 51            | 30 A        | Anti-lock brake system.<br>Electronic stability control.                                     |
| 52            | 40 A        | Right-hand heated windshield element.                                                        |
| 53            | 10 A        | Air conditioning clutch.                                                                     |
| 55            | 5 A         | Transmission control module.                                                                 |
| 56            | 5 A         | Anti-lock brake system.<br>Electronic stability control.                                     |
| 57            | 10 A        | Modified vehicle connection.                                                                 |
| 58            | 10 A        | Powertrain control module.                                                                   |
| 60            | 20 A        | Modified vehicle connection.                                                                 |
| 61            | 15 A        | Blind spot information system.<br>Front parking aid camera.<br>Rear view camera.             |
| 62            | 20 A        | Body control module.                                                                         |
| 63            | 10 A        | Modified vehicle connection.                                                                 |
| 64            | 5 A         | Headlamp leveling.                                                                           |
| 65            | 5 A         | Electronic power assist steering.                                                            |
| 66            | 5 A         | Dosing control unit - diesel.<br>Glow plugs - diesel.<br>Powertrain control module - diesel. |
| 67            | 20 A        | Powertrain control module.                                                                   |
| 68            | 20 A        | Powertrain control module.                                                                   |
| 69            | 15 A        | Powertrain control module.                                                                   |



# Fuses

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                              |
|---------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 70            | 20 A        | Powertrain control module.                       |
| 73            | 5 A         | Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor. |
| 79            | 10 A        | Heated exterior mirrors.                         |
| 80            | 5 A         | Modified vehicle connection.                     |
| 81            | 20 A        | Horn.                                            |
| 82            | 40 A        | Left-hand heated windshield element.             |
| 83            | 5 A         | Windshield heated washer jets.                   |
| 84            | 60 A        | Cooling fan.                                     |
| 85            | 30 A        | Fuel pump.                                       |
| 86            | 30 A        | Starter motor.                                   |
| 87            | 60 A        | Glow plug module - diesel.                       |
| 89            | 40 A        | Blower motor.                                    |
| 90            | 25 A        | Heated rear window.                              |

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



# Fuses

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component                                                                                    |
|---------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1             | 5 A         | Restraints control module.                                                                             |
| 2             | 5 A         | In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.<br>Rear blower motor.                                      |
| 3             | 10 A        | Parking assist control module.                                                                         |
| 4             | 10 A        | Ignition switch.<br>Push button ignition switch.                                                       |
| 5             | 20 A        | Central locking system.                                                                                |
| 6             | 10 A        | Direct current inverter.<br>Driver door lock.<br>Power exterior mirror switch.                         |
| 7             | 30 A        | Driver door control.                                                                                   |
| 9             | 5 A         | Auto-dimming interior mirror.<br>Front parking aid camera.<br>Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. |
| 10            | 10 A        | Restraints control module.                                                                             |
| 11            | 5 A         | Telematics control unit module.                                                                        |
| 12            | 5 A         | Anti-theft alarm.                                                                                      |
| 13            | 15 A        | Unlock.                                                                                                |
| 14            | 30 A        | Passenger door control.                                                                                |
| 15            | 10 A        | Battery energy control module.                                                                         |
| 17            | 15 A        | Voice control.<br>Information and entertainment display.<br>Compact disc player.                       |
| 18            | 7.5 A       | Wireless accessory charging module.                                                                    |
| 19            | 7.5 A       | Battery back-up sounder.                                                                               |
| 20            | 10 A        | Backup alarm.                                                                                          |
| 21            | 7.5 A       | Climate control.                                                                                       |
| 22            | 7.5 A       | Data link connector.                                                                                   |

# Fuses

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------|
|               |             | Instrument cluster. |
| 23            | 20 A        | Audio unit.         |
| 25            | 30 A        | Power windows.      |

## Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box

| Fuse Location | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------|
| 1             | 15 A        | Power supply.       |
| 2             | 15 A        | Ignition system.    |

## CHANGING A FUSE

### General Information



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse.

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

1. Fold back the carpet under the glove compartment.

2. Carefully remove the cover.

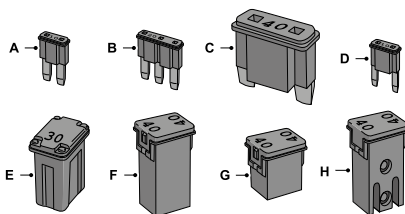
### Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Fold back the carpet.

### Fuse Types



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.

# Fuses

---

- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Do not work on a hot engine.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 255).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

### Check When Refueling

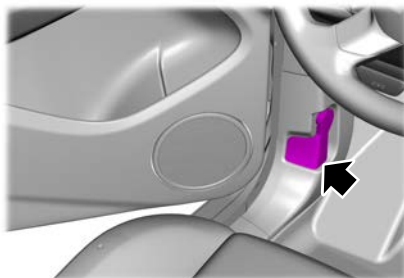
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 257).
- Tire pressures. See **Tire Care** (page 273).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 269).

### Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 254).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 255).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 256).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 286).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood

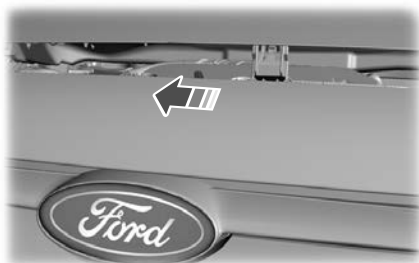


E164919

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Pull the hood release handle.

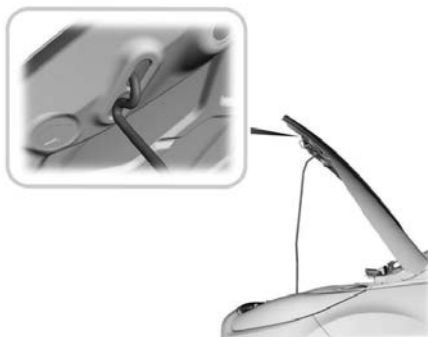
# Maintenance

---



E164920

3. Move the catch to the left.



E87786

4. Open the hood and support it with the support rod.

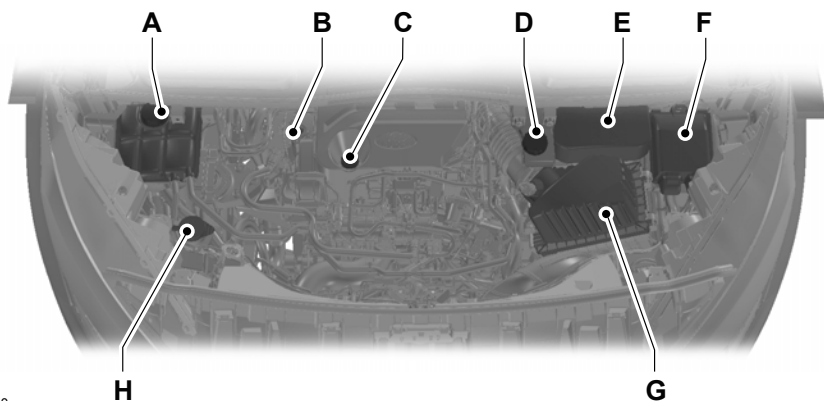
## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the support rod from the catch and secure correctly.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8 inches to 12 inches (20 centimeters to 30 centimeters).

**Note:** *Make sure the hood is fully closed.*

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



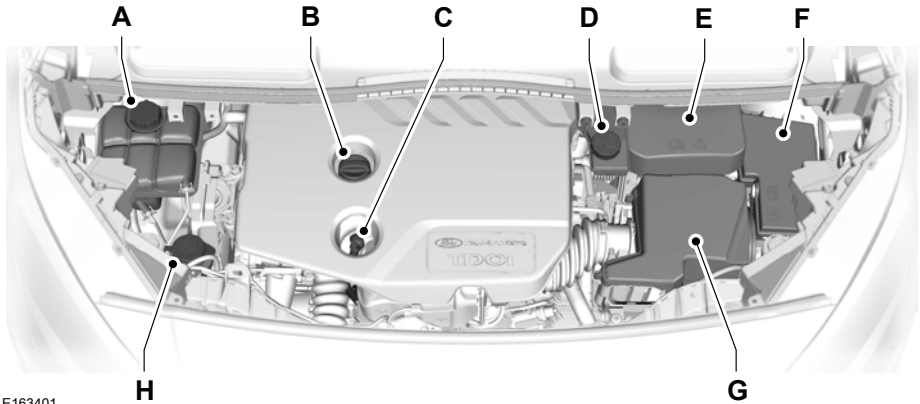
E272650

- A Engine coolant reservoir.\* See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 255).
- B Engine oil dipstick.\* See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- C Engine oil filler cap.\* See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir.\* See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 256). See **Clutch Fluid Check** (page 257).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 257).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 241).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 257).

\* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, LHD



E163401

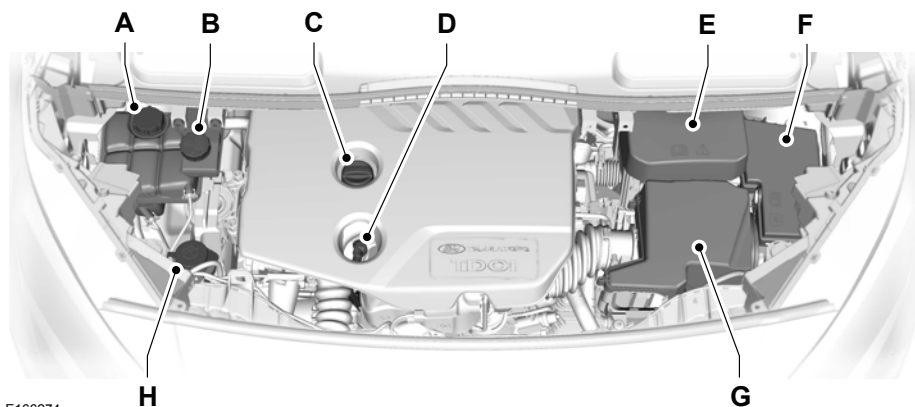
- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 255).
- B Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- C Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 256).
- E Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 257).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 241).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 257).

\* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, RHD



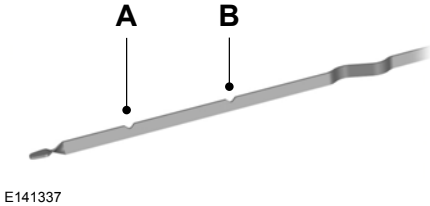
E166274

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 255).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir\*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 256).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- D Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 254).
- E Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 257).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 241).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 257).

\* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

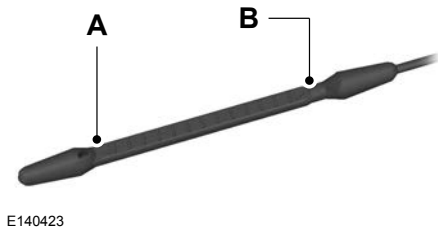
# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



- A Minimum.  
B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBLUE



- A Minimum.  
B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.

4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

## Adding Engine Oil



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 295).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

# Maintenance

## ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 159).

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir at ambient temperature. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, immediately add coolant.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

# Maintenance

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 295).

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of coolant can cause damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

# Maintenance



To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

## CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 256).

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 251).



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions. We recommend that you only use high quality washer fluid.

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



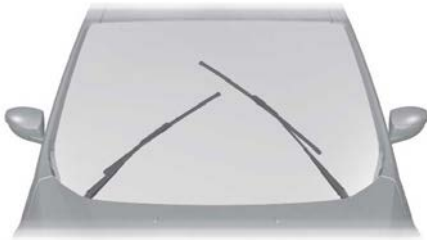
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

1. Switch the ignition off.

# Maintenance



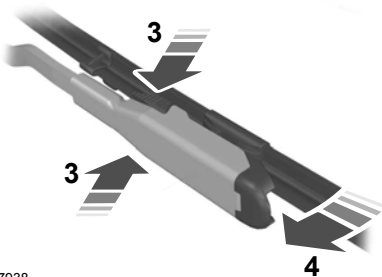
E162532

2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.

**Note:** You cannot manually move the wiper arms to the service position when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.



E257938

3. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

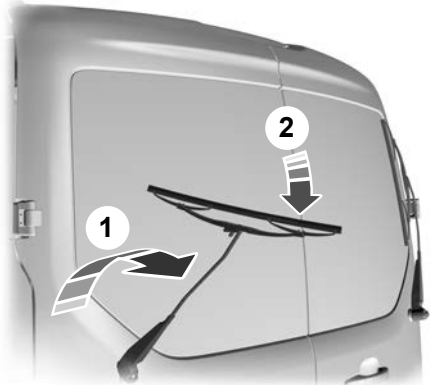
4. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
5. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CARGO DOORS



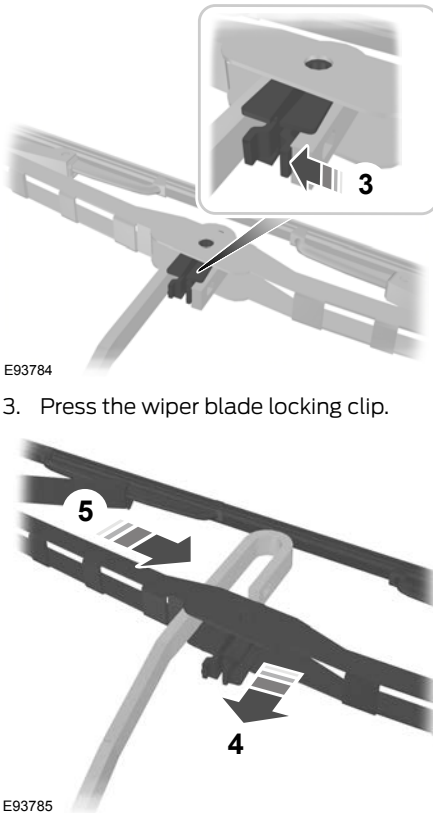
E165586

1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.

## Maintenance



3. Press the wiper blade locking clip.

4. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
5. Move the wiper blade to the side.



6. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

7. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

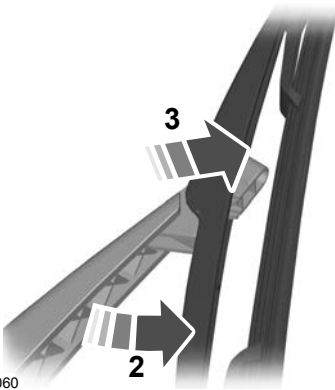
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

### CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LIFTGATE

1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

# Maintenance



E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## CHANGING A BULB



**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Bulbs can become hot, let the bulb cool down before removing it. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

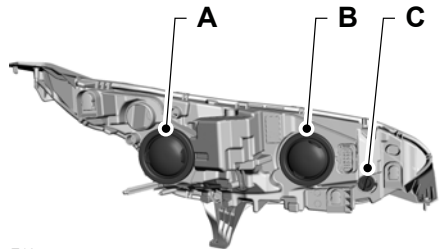
The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

You must fit bulbs of the correct specification. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 300).

**Note:** We recommended that you see an authorized dealer to change the headlamp bulbs if your vehicle is fitted with air conditioning. Some bulbs are difficult to access.

## Headlamp

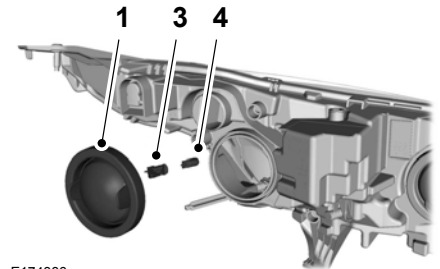
Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.



E165474

- A Headlamp low beam and side lamp
- B Headlamp high beam
- C Direction indicator

## Side Lamp



E174886

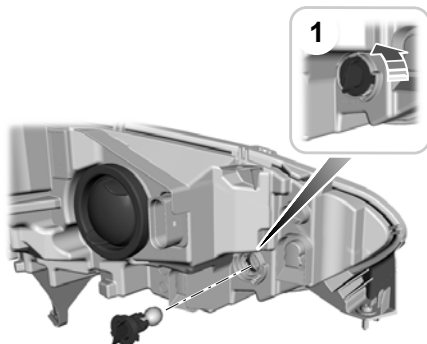
1. Remove the cover.



# Maintenance

2. Remove the low beam bulb to gain access to the side lamp bulb.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

## Direction Indicator

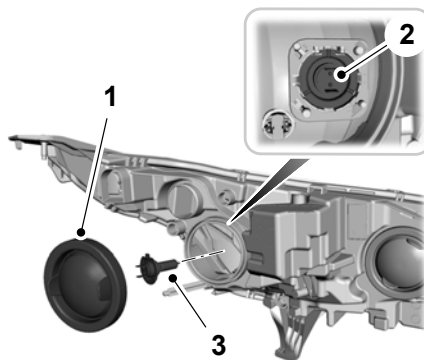


E165475

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

## Headlamp Low Beam



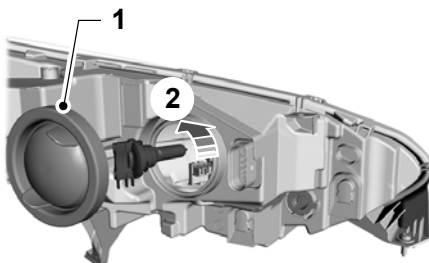
E165477

1. Remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Headlamp High Beam



E165476

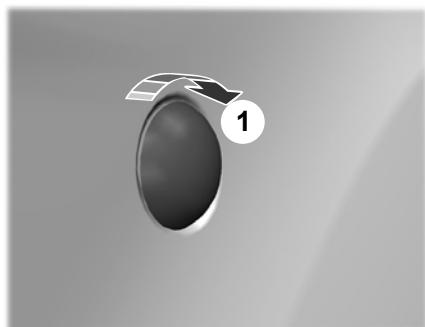
1. Remove the cover.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.

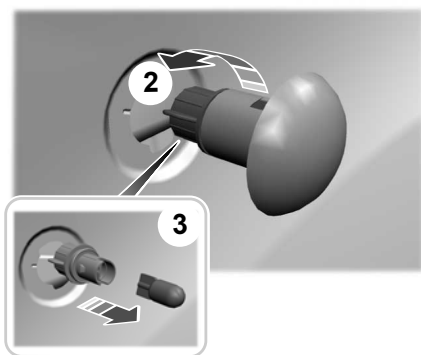
# Maintenance

## Side Direction Indicator



E165495

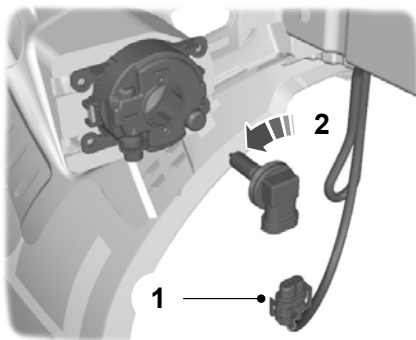
1. Turn the lamp clockwise and remove it.



E165496

2. Hold the bulb holder and turn the lamp counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Front Fog Lamps



E71062

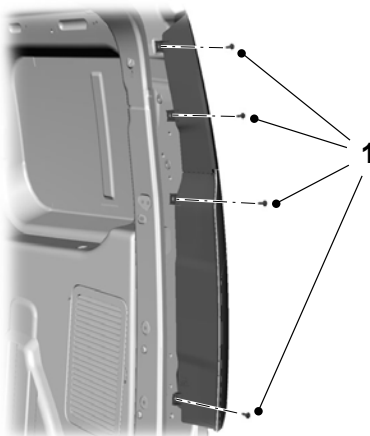
1. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

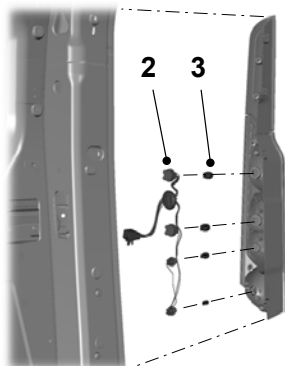
## Rear Lamps



E165484

# Maintenance

1. Remove the screws.



E165485

2. Turn the bulb holders counterclockwise to remove them.
3. Remove the bulbs by pulling them straight out.

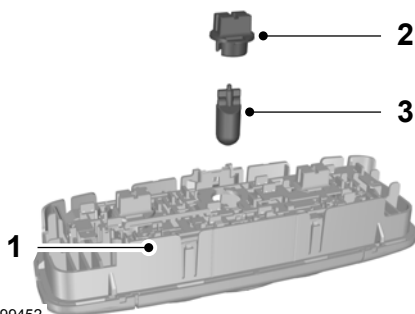
## Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

These are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

## License Plate Lamp

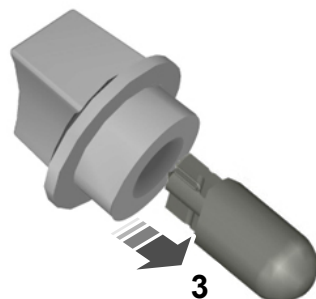
These are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

## Front Interior Lamp



E99452

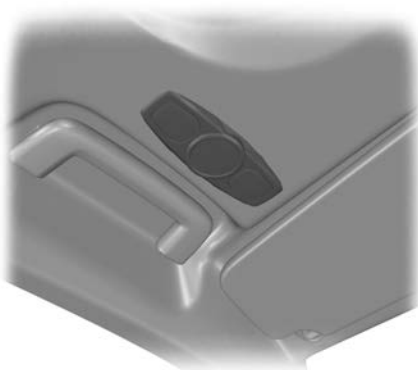
1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



E73939

3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Front Interior LED Lamps (If Equipped)

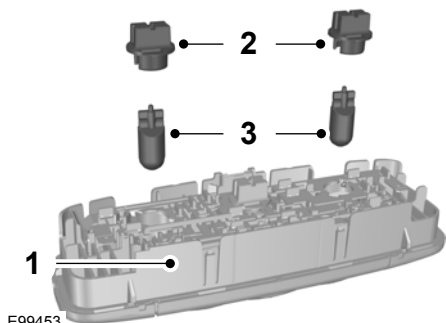


E125092

**Note:** If your vehicle has LED lamps these are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

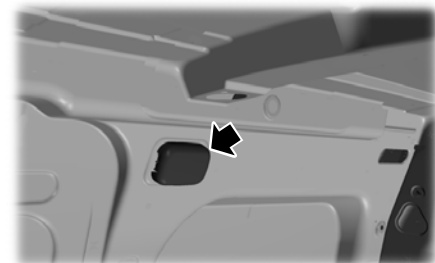
# Maintenance

## Reading Lamps

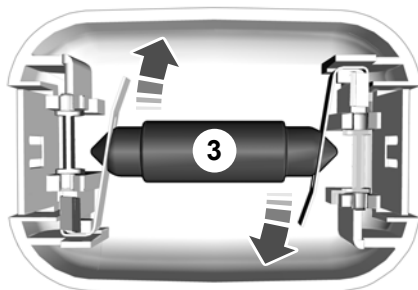
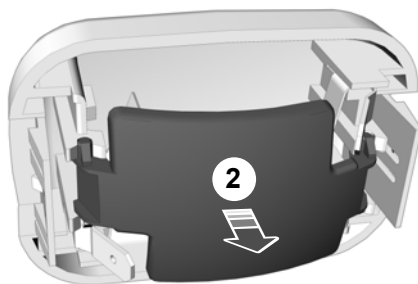


1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Cargo Area Lamp (If Equipped)



1. Pry off the lamp cover.



E166153

2. Remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, AdBlue residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Rinse the area well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

### Cleaning Wheels

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

# Vehicle Care

## Cleaning the Engine Compartment

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## Cleaning Stripes or Graphics

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C (179°F).

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

## Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

## Cleaning the Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Cleaning the Instrument Panel



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## Cleaning Plastic

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Displays and Screens

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## Cleaning Leather and Vinyl

We recommend that you only clean the leather and vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.

4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the fabric seats and headliners in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

# Vehicle Care

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## Cleaning Seatbelts



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Storage Compartments

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Moonroof Tracks

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.



# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 280).

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



**WARNING:** Do not use the inflator kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



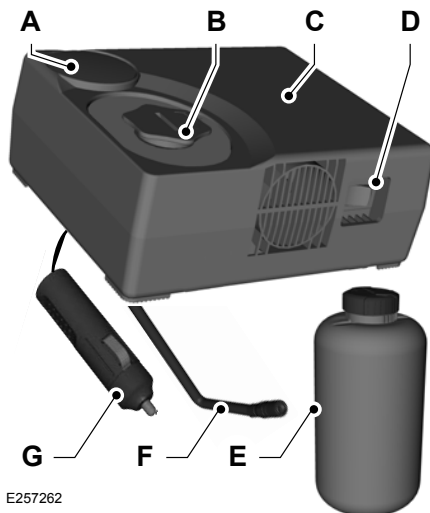
**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

**Note:** The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 6 mm (0.24 in).



E257262

- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.
- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

# Wheels and Tires



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Check for a punctured tire.

**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

## Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.



**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



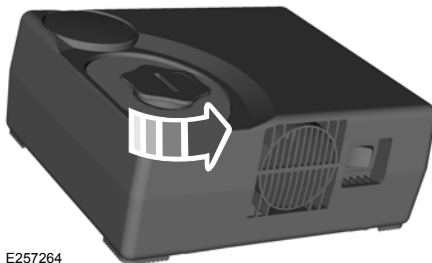
**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

To temporarily repair a punctured tire, do the following:



E257263

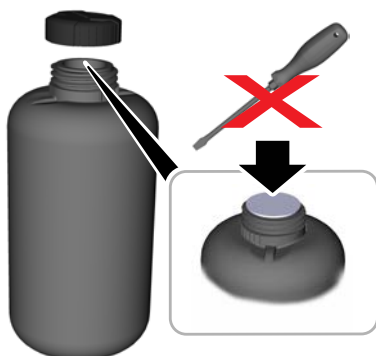
1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

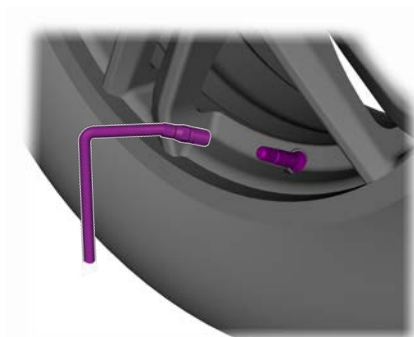
2. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

## Wheels and Tires



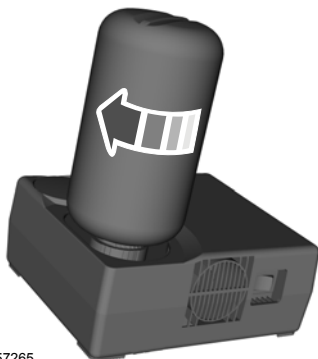
E256963

3. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257006

5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257265

4. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

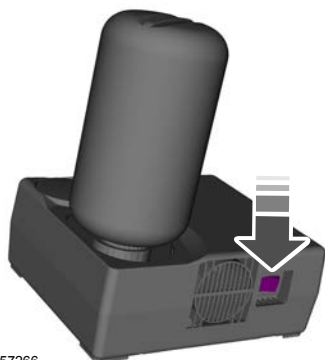
**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 123).
7. Start the engine.

## Wheels and Tires



E257266

8. Switch the compressor on.



E257121

9. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

**Note:** If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.

11. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.  
13. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



E257121

# Wheels and Tires

15. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 280).

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

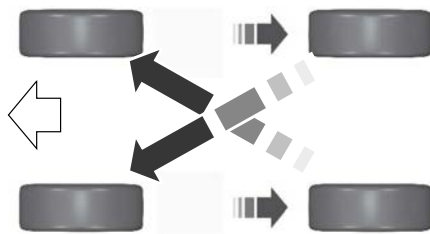
- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

## TIRE CARE

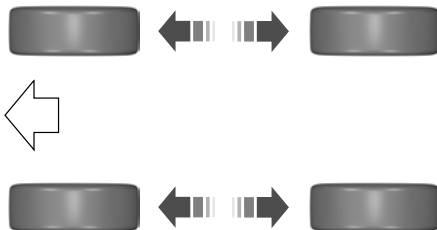
**Note:** Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

### Non-directional tires



E142547

### Directional tires



E70415

# Wheels and Tires

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TIRES



E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 280).



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

# Wheels and Tires

Only use snow chains on the front wheels. Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 205/60R16.
- 215/55R16.

**Note:** Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 280).

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Stability Control** (page 172).

**Note:** The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

Do not drive through an automatic car wash.



**WARNING:** Drive the shortest possible distances.



**WARNING:** Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.



**WARNING:** Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.



**WARNING:** If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Vehicle Jack



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.



**WARNING:** Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of approximately 3 inches (76 millimeters).

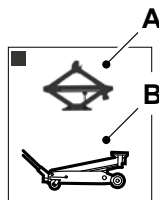
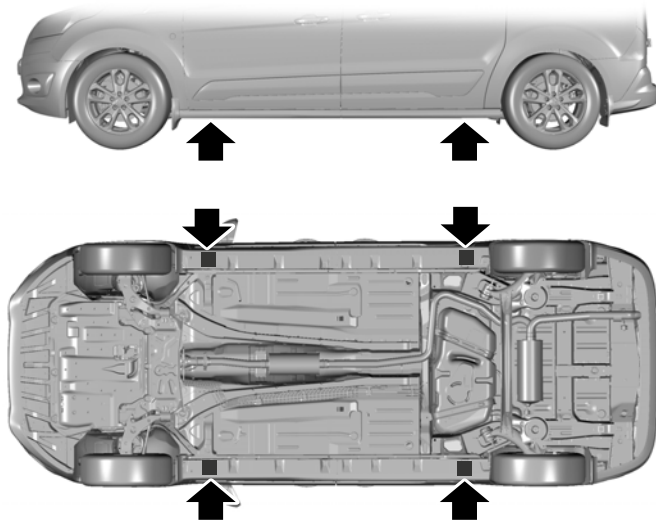
## Vehicles without a Temporary Mobility Kit

Your vehicle jack and wheel brace are located in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

## Jacking and Lifting Points



**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

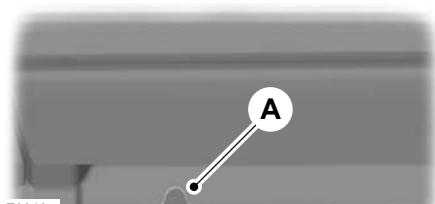


E164258

- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



# Wheels and Tires



E93184

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.



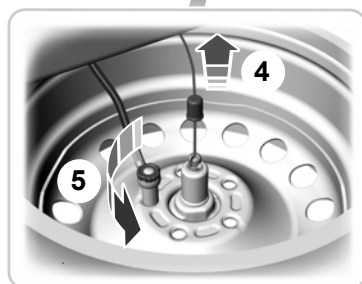
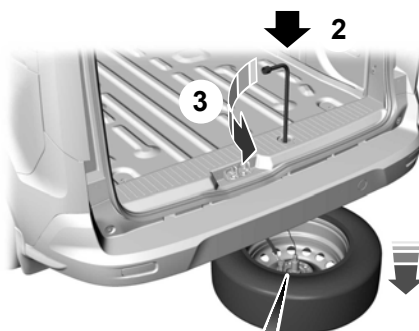
E142553



E93020

**Note:** You can use the wheel brace to raise and lower the jack.

## Lowering the Spare Wheel

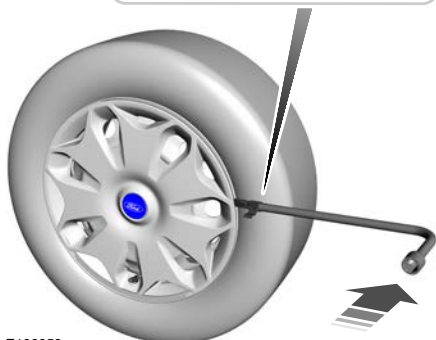
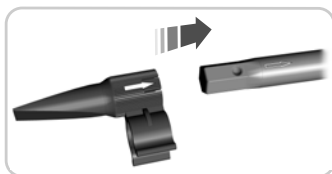


E290868

1. Remove the cap
2. Insert the hexagonal end of the wheel brace into the guide hole.
3. Turn the wheel brace counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and there is slack in the cable.
4. Unscrew the cap and slide it back, turn the nipple of the cable through 90 degrees to remove the first cable.
5. Unscrew the nut to remove the second cable.

# Wheels and Tires

## Removing the Wheel Trim



E166658

1. Insert the wheel brace and carefully remove the wheel trim.

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

## Removing a Road Wheel

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.



**WARNING:** Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

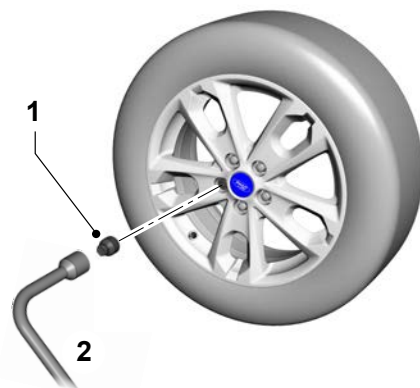


**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



E166675

2. Slacken the lug nuts.
3. Jack up your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

# Wheels and Tires

## Installing a Road Wheel

**WARNING:** Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare tire with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction have the tire refitted as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

**WARNING:** Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

**WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**WARNING:** Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

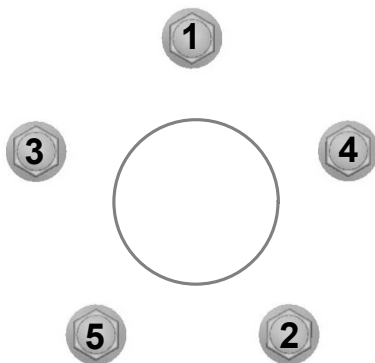
**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

**WARNING:** The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**WARNING:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are clean.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E154985

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 286).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

**WARNING:** Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

## Stowing the Flat Tire

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without the wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if lowered without a wheel attached.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint. When stowing the flat tire use a sheet or mat under the wheel to protect the paint.

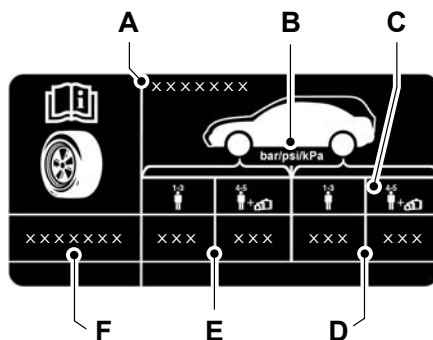
# Wheels and Tires

## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Vehicle load.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Front tire pressure.
- F Tire size.

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.5 (36)    | 2.4 (35)  | 2.6 (38)  | 3.4 (49)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 W XL |             |           |           |           |

# Wheels and Tires

## Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

| Tire Size         | bar (psi) |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 3.4 (50)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |           |

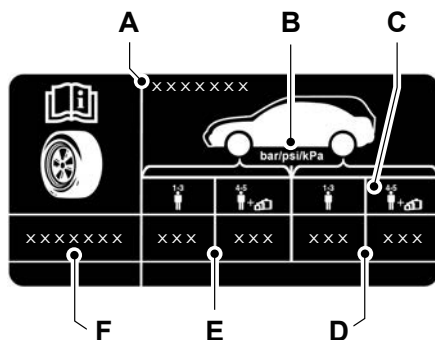
Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E291809

- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Vehicle load.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Front tire pressure.
- F Tire size.

# Wheels and Tires

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.3 (33)    | 2.3 (33)  | 2.6 (38)  | 3.4 (49)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 W XL |             |           |           |           |

## Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

| Tire Size         | bar (psi) |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 3.4 (50)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |           |

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

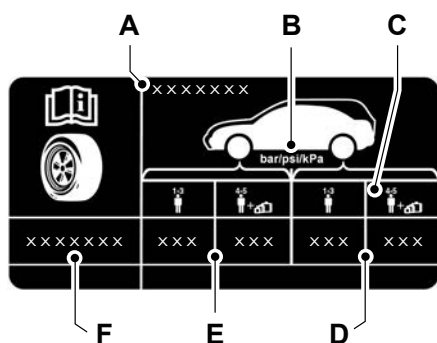
## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

# Wheels and Tires



- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Vehicle load.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Front tire pressure.
- F Tire size.

E291809

## Normal Payload

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.3 (33)    | 2.2 (32)  | 2.6 (38)  | 2.9 (42)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55 R17 98V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55 R17 98W XL |             |           |           |           |

## High Payload

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.3 (33)    | 2.3 (33)  | 2.6 (38)  | 3.4 (49)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55 R17 98V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55 R17 98W XL |             |           |           |           |

# Wheels and Tires

## Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

| Tire Size         | bar (psi) |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 3.4 (50)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |           |

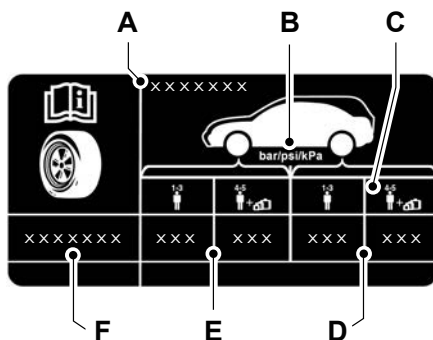
Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E291809

- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Vehicle load.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Front tire pressure.
- F Tire size.



# Wheels and Tires

## Normal Payload

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.3 (33)    | 2.2 (32)  | 2.7 (39)  | 3.2 (46)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 W XL |             |           |           |           |

## High Payload

| Tire Size         | Normal Load |           | Full Load |           |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                   | Front       | Rear      | Front     | Rear      |
|                   | bar (psi)   | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 2.3 (33)    | 2.2 (32)  | 2.6 (38)  | 3.4 (49)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 V XL |             |           |           |           |
| 215/55R17 98 W XL |             |           |           |           |

## Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

| Tire Size         | bar (psi) |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 205/60 R16 96H XL | 3.4 (50)  |
| 215/55 R16 97V XL |           |

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

# Wheels and Tires

---

## LUG NUTS

### Lug Nut Torque

| Nm ( lb.ft) |
|-------------|
| 204 (150)   |

### Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

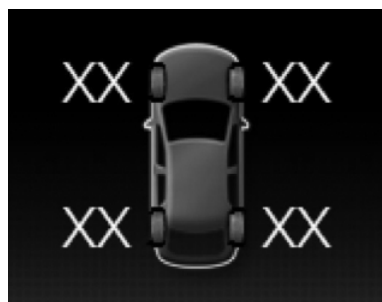
The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

**Note:** After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Select **Reset**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

| Warning Lamp                                | Possible Cause                                    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Solid warning lamp                          | One or more tires are significantly underinflated | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressures</b> (page 280). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.                       |
| Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp | Temporary spare wheel in use                      | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.                                                                                            |
|                                             | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction       | If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

---

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages

| Message                           | Action                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tyre pressure low                 | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.                |
| Tyre pressure monitor malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.                                                             |
| Tyre pressure sensor malfunction  | The temporary spare wheel is either in use or the system has detected a fault in the sensor that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## Capacities and Specifications

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - LONG WHEELBASE COM KOMBI

#### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,825–4,862<br>(190.0–191.4) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,785–1,854<br>(70.3–73.0)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 3,062 (120.6)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - LONG WHEELBASE DOUBLE CAB IN VAN/LONG WHEELBASE VAN

#### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,825–4,862<br>(190.0–191.4) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,807–1,859<br>(71.1–73.2)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 3,062 (120.6)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - LONG WHEELBASE KOMBI

### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,825–4,862<br>(190.0–191.4) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,785–1,854<br>(70.3–73.0)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 3,062 (120.6)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SHORT WHEELBASE COM KOMBI

### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,425–4,462<br>(174.2–175.7) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,806–1,854<br>(71.1–73.0)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 2,662 (104.8)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |

## Capacities and Specifications

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SHORT WHEELBASE DOUBLE CAB IN VAN/SHORT WHEELBASE VAN

#### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,425–4,462<br>(174.2–175.7) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,802–1,867<br>(70.9–73.5)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 2,662 (104.8)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SHORT WHEELBASE KOMBI

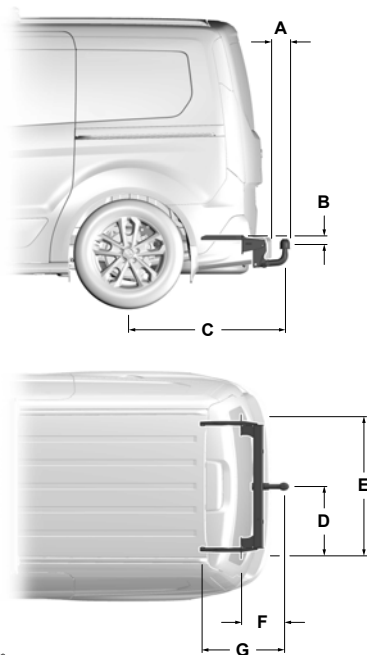
#### Vehicle Dimensions

| Dimension Description                         | mm (in)                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Overall length.                               | 4,425–4,462<br>(174.2–175.7) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,137 (84.1)                 |
| Overall height excluding the antenna.         | 1,806–1,854<br>(71.1–73.0)   |
| Wheelbase.                                    | 2,662 (104.8)                |
| Front track.                                  | 1,568 (61.7)                 |
| Rear track.                                   | 1,582 (62.3)                 |



# Capacities and Specifications

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS



E163459

| Item | Dimension description                                | mm (in)    |
|------|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| A    | Bumper to end of tow ball                            | 113 (4.4)  |
| B    | Attachment point to center of tow ball               | 21 (0.8)   |
| C    | Wheel center to center of tow ball                   | 963 (37.9) |
| D    | Center of tow ball to side member                    | 493 (19.4) |
| E    | Distance between side members                        | 986 (38.8) |
| F    | Center of tow ball to center of attachment point one | 268 (10.6) |
| G    | Center of tow ball to center of attachment point two | 505 (19.9) |

# Capacities and Specifications

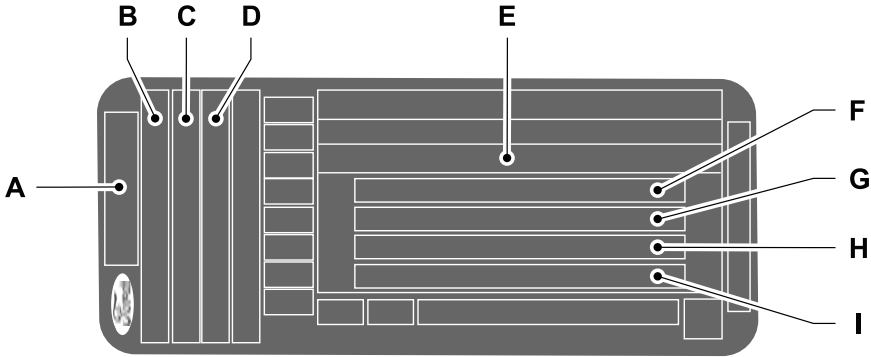
## Maximum Permissible Nose Weight

| kg (lb)        |
|----------------|
| 75 kg (165 lb) |

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

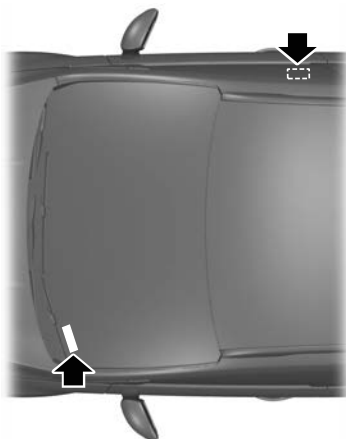


- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Engine power and emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## Air Conditioning System



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

| Variant | Global Warming Potential | CO <sub>2</sub> Equivalent |
|---------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| All.    | 1430                     | 0.83 tonnes                |

## Capacities

| Variant | Refrigerant       | Refrigerant Oil                 |
|---------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| All.    | 0.58 kg (20.5 oz) | 120 cm <sup>3</sup> (4.1 fl oz) |

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

| Name                                                | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Refrigerant - R-134A                                | WSH-M17B19-A  |
| Compressor Oil - Air Conditioning<br>6U7J-M1C231-CA | WSH-M1C231-B  |

## Engine

### Engine Oil

#### Capacities

| Variant | Including the Oil Filter | Excluding the Oil Filter |
|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| All.    | 4.97 L (1.1 gal)         | 4.87 L (1.1 gal)         |

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.5 L (0.3 gal).

## Materials

| Name                   | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 | WSS-M2C948-B  |

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

### Engine Coolant

#### Capacities

| Variant                                  | Quantity        |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Vehicles with a manual transmission.     | 5.5 L (1.2 gal) |
| Vehicles with an automatic transmission. | 5.8 L (1.3 gal) |

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Materials

| Name                                           | Specification |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Antifreeze Super Plus Premium<br>FU7J-19544-xx | WSS-M97B44-D  |

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity        |
|---------|-----------------|
| All.    | 56 L (12.3 gal) |

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity      |
|---------|---------------|
| All.    | 3 L (0.7 gal) |

## Materials

| Name                                         | Specification |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Screen Wash<br>FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA | WSS-M14P19-A  |

## Brake System

### Materials

| Name                                                     | Specification |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance<br>BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2  |

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.

- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

### Air Conditioning System



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

| Variant | Global Warming Potential | CO <sub>2</sub> Equivalent |
|---------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| All.    | 1430                     | 0.83 tonnes                |

### Capacities

| Variant | Refrigerant       | Refrigerant Oil                 |
|---------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| All.    | 0.58 kg (20.5 oz) | 120 cm <sup>3</sup> (4.1 fl oz) |

### Materials

| Name                                             | Specification |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Refrigerant - R-134A                             | WSH-M17B19-A  |
| Compressor Oil - Air Conditioning 6U7J-M1C231-CA | WSH-M1C231-B  |

# Capacities and Specifications

## Engine

### Engine Oil

#### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity      |
|---------|---------------|
| All.    | 6 L (1.3 gal) |

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).

#### Materials

| Name                   | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 | WSS-M2C952-A1 |

#### Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C952-A1, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

## Fuel Tank

#### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity        |
|---------|-----------------|
| All.    | 52 L (11.4 gal) |

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank

#### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity         |
|---------|------------------|
| All.    | 17.6 L (3.9 gal) |

# Capacities and Specifications

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity      |
|---------|---------------|
| All.    | 3 L (0.7 gal) |

### Materials

| Name                                         | Specification |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Screen Wash<br>FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA | WSS-M14P19-A  |

## Brake System

### Materials

| Name                                                     | Specification |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance<br>BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2  |

# BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

### Exterior Lamps

| Lamp                                                         | Specification               | Power (Watts) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| Daytime running lamp.                                        | LED (light emitting diode). | -             |
| Front direction indicator.                                   | PW24W.                      | 24            |
| Headlamp low beam - vehicles with halogen headlamps.         | H7.                         | 55            |
| Headlamp high beam - vehicles with halogen headlamps.        | H15.                        | 55            |
| Headlamp - vehicles with high intensity discharge headlamps. | D8S.                        | 25            |
| Cornering lamp.                                              | H1.                         | 55            |
| Front fog lamp.                                              | H11.                        | 55            |



## Capacities and Specifications

| Lamp                               | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Direction indicator side repeater. | WY5W.         | 5             |
| Approach lamp.                     | W5W.          | 5             |
| Rear lamp and stoplamp.            | P21/5W.       | 21/5          |
| High mounted stoplamp.             | LED.          | -             |
| Rear direction indicator.          | PY21W.        | 21            |
| Rear fog lamp.                     | P21W.         | 21            |
| Reversing lamp.                    | W16W.         | 16            |
| License plate lamp. <sup>1</sup>   | W5W.          | 5             |

<sup>1</sup> Licence plate lamps are also available as LED lamps.

**Note:** We recommend that you have LED changed by an authorized dealer.

### Interior Lamps

| Lamp                                           | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Cargo lamp - vehicles without LED cargo lamps. | Festoon.      | 10            |
| Cargo lamp - vehicles with LED cargo lamps.    | LED.          | -             |
| Luggage compartment lamp.                      | LED.          | -             |
| Map reading lamp.                              | W6W.          | 6             |
| Interior lamp.                                 | W6W.          | 6             |

**Note:** We recommend that you have LED changed by an authorized dealer.

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

### Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions

The declared fuel/energy consumptions, CO<sub>2</sub>-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. Light Duty Vehicle type-approved using the World Harmonised Light Vehicle Test Procedure (WLTP) will have Fuel/Energy Consumption and CO<sub>2</sub>-Emission information for New European Drive Cycle (NEDC) and WLTP. WLTP will fully replace the NEDC latest by the end of the year 2020. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

During NEDC phase-out, WLTP fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions are being correlated back to NEDC. There will be some variance to the previous fuel economy and emissions as some elements of the tests have altered, so the same car might have different fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. CO<sub>2</sub> is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

### WLTP

| Low             | Medium         | High            | Extra-High     | Combined       | CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | g/km                      |
| 8.7–7.4 (32–38) | 7.4–6 (38–47)  | 7.1–5.8 (40–49) | 9–7.6 (31–37)  | 8–6.7 (35–42)  | 152–181                   |

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBLUE

### NEDC

| Urban           | Extra-Urban    | Combined        | CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg)  | g/km                      |
| 5.9–4.4 (48–64) | 5.2–4 (54–71)  | 5.4–4.1 (52–69) | 108–141                   |

### WLTP

| Low             | Medium          | High           | Extra-High      | Combined        | CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg)  | L/100 km (mpg)  | g/km                      |
| 7.7–5.2 (37–54) | 6.5–4.6 (43–61) | 6–4.4 (47–64)  | 7.6–5.8 (37–49) | 6.9–5.1 (41–55) | 133–180                   |

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### What Is the Modem



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

### Enabling and Disabling the Modem - Vehicles With: 4 Inch Information and Entertainment Display Screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Connectivity features**.
3. Select **Data sharing**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### Enabling and Disabling the Modem - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### Enabling and Disabling the Modem - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Information and Entertainment Display Screen/8 Inch Information and Entertainment Display Screen

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### Connecting FordPass to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.

## Connected Vehicle

6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

### CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

| Symptom                                                              | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch connectivity features on.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul> |

## Connected Vehicle

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

| Symptom                                                                        | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                           |
| The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## Connected Vehicle

| Symptom                                                                                                               | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– System limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.</li><li>• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li></ul></li></ul>                                                                                                                                                           |
| Software downloads take too long.                                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li></ul></li></ul> |
| The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– No software update available.</li><li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li></ul></li></ul>         |

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

---

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi visibility**.

**Note:** The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.

**Note:** The SSID is the hotspot name.

5. Select **View password**.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Change SSID name**.
7. Enter your required SSID.
8. Select **Done**.
9. Select **Change password**.
10. Enter your required password.
11. Select **Done**.



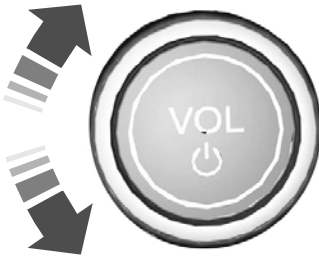
# Audio System

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

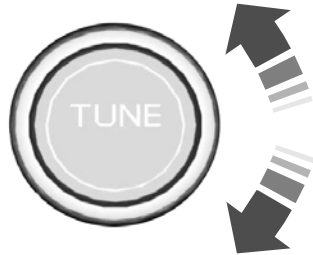
### Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



### Adjusting the Volume



### Changing Radio Stations Manual Tuning



**Note:** You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

**Note:** You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

### Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.  
Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

### Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.  
Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

### Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

# Audio System

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

## Switching the Screen On and Off



## Sound Settings

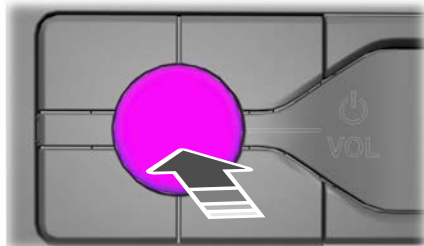


Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

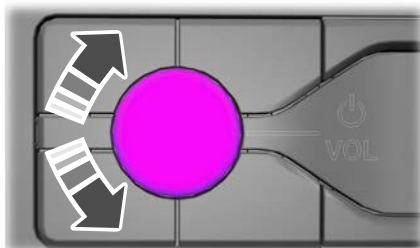
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

### Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



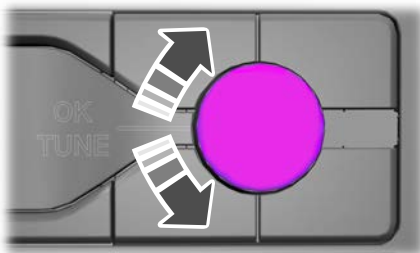
E260686

### Adjusting the Volume



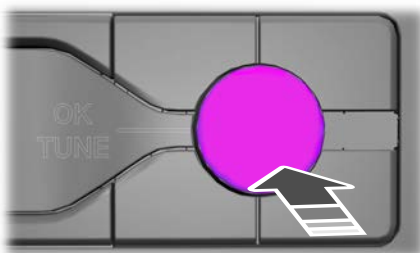
E260697

### Scrolling Through the Menu Options



E260782

### Selecting a Menu Option



E260781

# Audio System

## Returning to the Previous Screen



Repeatedly press the button, or rotate the right-hand rotary control to scroll through the available media sources.

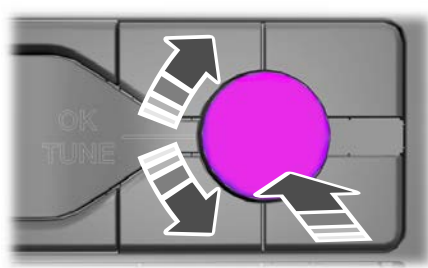
## Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode.

Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button, or rotate the right-hand rotary control to scroll through the available radio sources.

## Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change radio stations.

Press the control to open the station list. Rotate the control to browse the station list. Press the control again to select a station.

**Note:** You can change the radio frequency by using the seek buttons.

**Note:** You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons.

## Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

## Seek Up and Next Track Button



## Seek Down and Previous Track Button



## Pausing or Playing Media



In radio mode, press the button to mute the signal. Press the button again to restore the signal.

In media mode, press the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

## System Settings



## Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the adaptive or speed compensated volume.

## Using a Cell Phone



You can make a call from a recent call list, contact list or dial a number.

# Audio System

## AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

### Adjusting the Clock



Press the button.

Select the clock and follow the instructions on the screen.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

### Pairing a Device



Press the button.

Select **Bluetooth®** and follow the instructions on the screen.

**Note:** When pairing a new device, you can choose to download contacts, set this as the primary device and enable Emergency Assistance.

## STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

### Selecting a Bluetooth® Source



1. Press the button to display the menu.
2. Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the **Bluetooth®** device.
3. Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.



Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

**Note:** Not all functions are supported by all phones.

## PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

### Supported Audio File Formats

You can play audio file formats including MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

**Note:** The NTFS file system is not supported.

### Selecting the USB Device



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to your USB device.

Press the **OK** button.

### Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

# Audio System



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

**Note:** When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

## Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

Press the **OK** button to view the available categories.

## USB PORT

USB Ports could be in the following locations:

- On the center console below the gearshift lever.
- Under the front passenger double seat cushion.

You can use the USB port to charge a device only when the engine is running.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

### Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** This only works when connected via **Bluetooth®**. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 312).

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### About SYNC

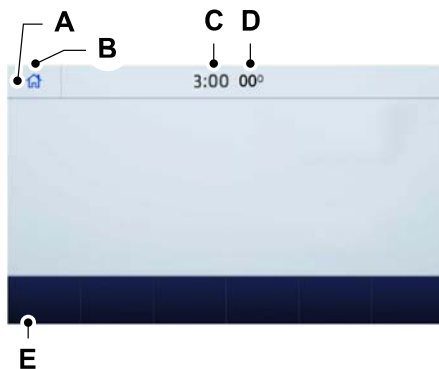
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

## Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 334).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

### Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

## Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 322).



Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 324).



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 327).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 329).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 333).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 334).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning Displays and Screens** (page 267).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

**Note:** The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

**Note:** The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

#### Installing an Update

**Note:** You can use the system when installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** You can use the system when download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 305).

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

**Note:** Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

**Note:** Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

## General

| Voice Command        | Description                                                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ___ list of commands | Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup> |
| Cancel               | Cancel an active voice session.                                   |
| ___ help             | Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup> |
| Back                 | Return to the previous screen.                                    |
| Main menu            | Go to the main menu.                                              |



# SYNC™ 3

| Voice Command | Description              |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| Next page     | Go to the next page.     |
| Previous page | Go to the previous page. |

<sup>1</sup> Add the name of the feature to the command.

## Entertainment

### Audio Source

| Voice Command   | Description                |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Radio           | Use the radio.             |
| CD Player       | Use the CD player.         |
| Bluetooth audio | Use a Bluetooth device.    |
| USB             | Use a USB or media player. |

### Radio

| Voice Command | Description                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| AM            | Listen to AM radio.                           |
| ___ AM        | Tune to a specific AM frequency. <sup>1</sup> |
| DAB           | Listen to DAB radio.                          |
| FM            | Listen to FM radio.                           |
| ___ FM        | Tune to a specific FM frequency. <sup>1</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

## USB and Media Player

| Voice Command         | Description                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Play album ____       | Play your music by category. <sup>1</sup>                   |
| Play artist ____      |                                                             |
| Play audiobook ____   |                                                             |
| Play genre ____       |                                                             |
| Play playlist ____    |                                                             |
| Play podcast ____     |                                                             |
| Play song ____        |                                                             |
| Browse all albums     | Browse music on a USB device.                               |
| Browse all artists    |                                                             |
| Browse all audiobooks |                                                             |
| Browse all genres     |                                                             |
| Browse all playlists  |                                                             |
| Browse all podcasts   |                                                             |
| Browse all tracks     |                                                             |
| Browse album ____     | Browse your music by category on a USB device. <sup>1</sup> |
| Browse artist ____    |                                                             |
| Browse audiobook ____ |                                                             |
| Browse genre ____     |                                                             |
| Browse playlist ____  |                                                             |
| Browse podcast ____   |                                                             |

<sup>1</sup> Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

## Phone

| Voice Command          | Description                                                                      |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pair phone             | Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.                                   |
| Redial                 | Redial the last number that you dialed.                                          |
| Dial ____              | Dial a number. <sup>1</sup>                                                      |
| Call ____              | Call a specific contact from your phonebook. <sup>2</sup>                        |
| Call ____ ____         | Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. <sup>3</sup> |
| Listen to message      | Listen to a text message.                                                        |
| Listen to message ____ | Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.                  |
| Reply to message       | Reply to the last text message.                                                  |

<sup>1</sup> Add the number you want to dial to the command.

<sup>2</sup> Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

<sup>3</sup> Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

### Setting a Destination

| Voice Command          | Description                                                                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Find an address        | Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city. |
| Find a POI             | Search for a point of interest by name or by category.                                     |
| Find nearest ____      | Search for a nearby point of interest by category. <sup>1</sup>                            |
| Find a POI category    | Search for a point of interest category. <sup>1</sup>                                      |
| Destination home       | Set your saved home address as your destination.                                           |
| Destination work       | Set your saved place of work as your destination.                                          |
| Previous destinations  | Display and select from a list of previous destinations.                                   |
| Favourite destinations | Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.                                   |

<sup>1</sup> Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

### Route Guidance

| Voice Command           | Description                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cancel route            | Cancel the current route.                                                                             |
| Reroute                 | Select an alternate route.                                                                            |
| Repeat last instruction | Repeat the last guidance prompt.                                                                      |
| Show route              | Display an overview of the route.                                                                     |
| Show map                | Display the map on the touchscreen.                                                                   |
| Show north up           | Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.                           |
| Show heading up         | Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen. |
| Show 3D                 | Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.                |

## Apps

### General

| Voice Command | Description                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Mobile apps   | Start an app. The system prompts you for the app name. |
| List apps     | Get a list of apps running on your device.             |
| Find apps     | Search and connect to apps running on your device.     |

### Active App

| Voice Command | Description                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| ___ help      | Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. <sup>1</sup> |
| Close ___     | Close an app. <sup>1</sup>                                    |

<sup>1</sup> Add an app name to the command.

## Voice Settings

| Voice Command             | Description                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Voice settings            | Go to the voice settings menu.                                                                |
| Interaction mode standard | Switch long voice prompts on.                                                                 |
| Interaction mode advanced | Switch short voice prompts on.                                                                |
| Call confirmation on      | Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.          |
| Call confirmation off     | Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call. |
| Voice command lists on    | Switch the display of voice commands on.                                                      |
| Voice command lists off   | Switch the display of voice commands off.                                                     |

## Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

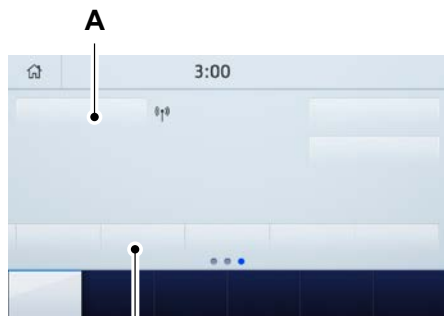
## Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

## ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



A

B

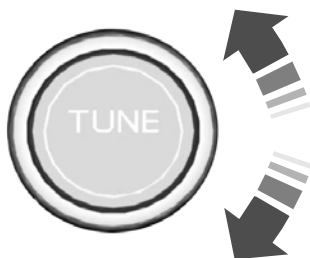
- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Using the Radio

### Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

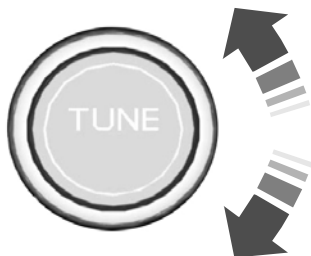
### Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

### Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

## Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

**Note:** You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

**Note:** If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

## Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 327).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

## Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

## Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

**Note:** The system indexes your music before you can play it.

## Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

**Note:** You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

## Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

## Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

## Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

## CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 334).

## Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

## Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.





Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

## Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

## Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

## Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

**MAX A/C:** Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

**A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

## Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

## Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

## Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

## Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

## Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

## Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

## Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

## Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on. Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

## Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

### Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

### Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

### Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

### Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

## Using Text Messaging

| Menu Item | Description                                             |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Hear it   | Hear the text message.                                  |
| View      | View the text message.                                  |
| Call      | Call the sender.                                        |
| Reply     | Reply to the text message with a standard text message. |

## Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

## Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

### Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.

3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

## Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

## Switching Android Auto Off

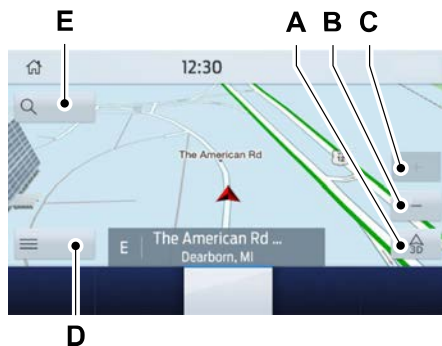
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

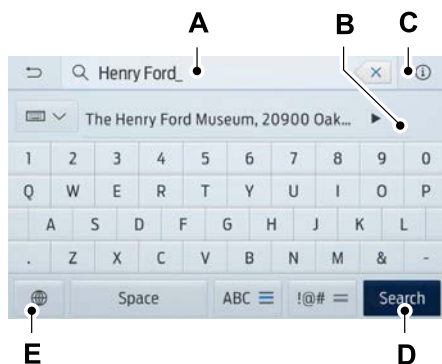


- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination

### Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**Note:** You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

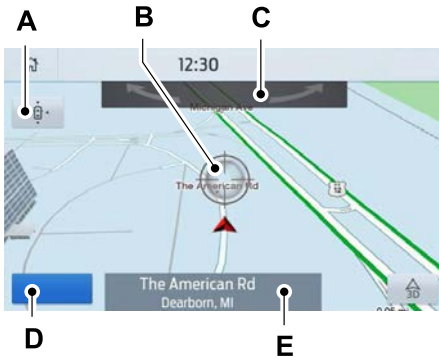
**Note:** You do not have to enter the destination country.

**Note:** To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

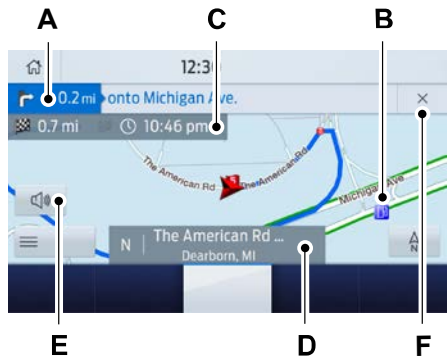
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

## Route Guidance Menu

| Menu Item             | Description                                                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Screen view           | Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.        |
| Full map              | View a full screen map when route guidance is active.                 |
| Motorway exit info    | View exit information for your current route.                         |
| Turn list             | View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it. |
| Traffic list          | View traffic nearby or on your current route. <sup>1</sup>            |
| Navigation settings   | Adjust navigation settings.                                           |
| Where am I?           | View information about your current location.                         |
| Cancel route          | Cancel route guidance.                                                |
| Show route            | View the entire current route on the map.                             |
| Re-route              | View an alternative route compared to your current one.               |
| Edit waypoints        | Change the order or remove waypoints.                                 |
| Optimise order        | The system determines the order of waypoints for you.                 |
| Start                 | Go to the next screen and start the new route.                        |
| Search                | Enter a destination address.                                          |
| Home                  | Set your saved home address as your destination                       |
| Work                  | Set your saved place of work as your destination.                     |
| Favourites            | Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.              |
| Previous destinations | Display and select from a list of previous destinations.              |
| POI                   | Display the point of interest categories.                             |

<sup>1</sup> Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

### Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

## Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

## Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

## Canceling Route Guidance

### Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

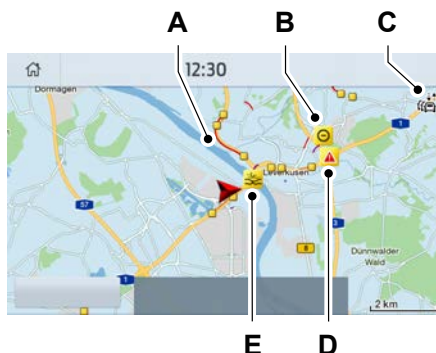
### Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

## Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

## Switching Live Traffic On

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 304).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

## Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.



HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## APPS

**Note:** For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 334).

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

## Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off.
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
3. Pair your device.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off.

3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

## Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

## Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

## Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

## Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

## Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

## Bluetooth

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

## Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

## Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

## Emergency Assistance

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

## FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

## General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

## Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

## Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

## Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

## Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

## **Valet Mode (If Equipped)**

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

## **Vehicle (If Equipped)**

You can adjust the camera settings.

## **Voice Control**

You can adjust the voice control settings.

## **Wi-Fi**

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

| Symptom                                                       | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The system does not understand what I am saying.              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 316).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are speaking too soon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| The system does not understand the name of a track or artist. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 316).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> <p>The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system.</p> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touch-screen to select and play the track.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Symptom                                                                                                         | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                |
| The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## USB and Bluetooth Audio

| Symptom                     | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot connect my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Symptom                                                       | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect device settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> <li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| The system does not recognize my device.                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| The system does not understand the name of a track or artist. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device not connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 327).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Media player not running. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the media player on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| The system does not recognize the music on my device.         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Corrupt files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Copyright protected files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Unsupported file format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 322).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

# SYNC™ 3

| Symptom                                                                   | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device indexing required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 334).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume down on your device</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order. | <p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li> </ul> |

## Phone

| Symptom                                                                                                    | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| I cannot download phonebook.                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 334).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 334).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                          |



| Symptom                         | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot connect my cell phone. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> <li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li> <li>• Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 334).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Text messaging does not work.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| I cannot hear text messages.    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## Navigation (if Equipped)

| Symptom                                        | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect entry method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| The system does not recognize coordinates.     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong coordinates format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

## Apps

| Symptom                                                                                                                                    | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The system cannot find any apps.                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect app settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Apps failed to fully close. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li> <li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                     |
| I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Symptom                                                                                                                                | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                  |
| I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li></ul></li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li></ul></li></ul> |

## Wi-Fi Connectivity

| Symptom                                                                | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                           |
| The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Symptom                                                                                                               | Possible Cause and Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Software downloads take too long.                                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>            |

## Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## Appendices

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

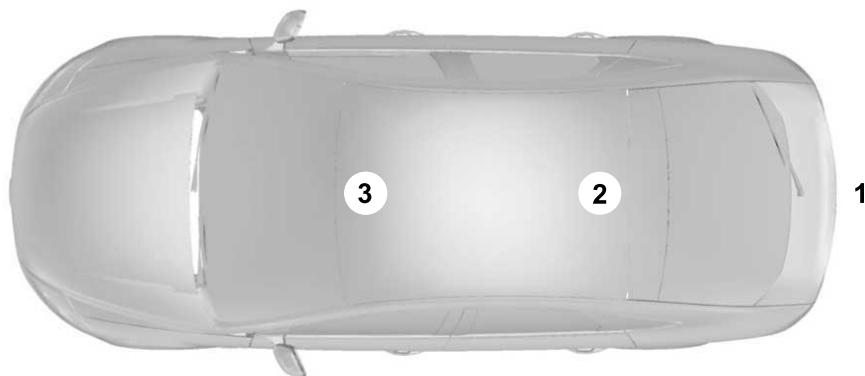


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

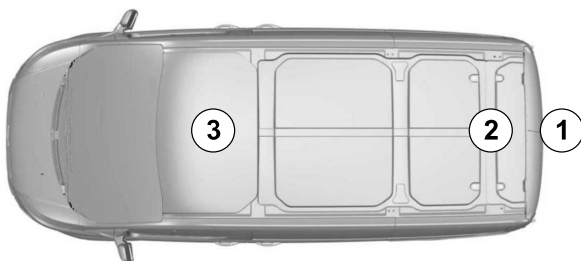
#### Car/SUV



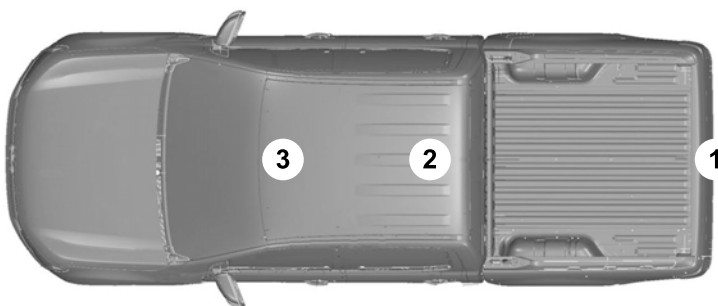
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



## Appendices

---

| <b>Frequency Band<br/>MHz</b> | <b>Maximum output power Watt (Peak<br/>RMS)</b> | <b>Antenna Positions</b> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1-30                          | 50                                              | 1                        |
| 50-54                         | 50                                              | 2, 3                     |
| 68-88                         | 50                                              | 2, 3                     |
| 142-176                       | 50                                              | 2, 3                     |
| 380-512                       | 50                                              | 2, 3                     |
| 806-870                       | 10                                              | 2, 3                     |



## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

## Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

### **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

#### General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

## Appendices

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

### Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service; (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Appendices

## Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator



## Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.



# Appendices

---

## 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

# Appendices

---

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

# Appendices

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Appendices

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

# Appendices

---

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Appendices

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

## Appendices

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.



# Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:  
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Territory | Notice |
|-----------|--------|
|-----------|--------|

|           |                                               |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Argentina | IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO" |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|

|         |                                                                                                                                            |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ecuador | "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011"<br>"source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®" |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                 |                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico | "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)" |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Country | Notice |
|---------|--------|
|---------|--------|

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Jordan | "© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data. |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

# Appendices

---

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungsämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

# Appendices

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Austria                                                                                                         | "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"                                                                                                         | Spain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"                   |
| Croatia<br>Cyprus,<br>Estonia,<br>Latvia,<br>Lithuania,<br>Moldova,<br>Poland,<br>Slovenia<br>and/or<br>Ukraine | "© EuroGeographics"                                                                                                                                  | Sweden                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."   |
| France                                                                                                          | "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"                                                                                                                     | Switzerland                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie." |
| Germany                                                                                                         | "Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"                                                                      | <p>E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.</p> |                                                               |
| Great Britain                                                                                                   | "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
| Greece                                                                                                          | "Copyright Geomatics Ltd."                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
| Hungary                                                                                                         | "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
| Italy                                                                                                           | "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana." |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
| Norway                                                                                                          | "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"                                                                                                      | <p>VI. Australia Territory</p> <p>A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:</p> <p>Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                               |
| Portugal                                                                                                        | "Source: IgeoE – Portugal"                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                               |

# Appendices

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

## VII. China Territory

### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b)

with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### *Limited Warranty*

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### *rigCustomer Remedies*

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

# Appendices

---

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

# Appendices

---

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software

or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

# Appendices

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

# Appendices

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelmatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

| Website                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a> |

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

| Website                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a> |

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelmatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelmatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or



Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## **7. Please Note**

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## **DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY**

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit [www.wirelessconformity.ford.com](http://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com).



# Index

## A

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| A/C                                                  |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                            | 101 |
| About This Manual.....                               | 7   |
| ABS                                                  |     |
| See: Brakes.....                                     | 168 |
| ABS driving hints                                    |     |
| See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....     | 168 |
| Accessories                                          |     |
| See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....           | 9   |
| ACC                                                  |     |
| See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....              | 191 |
| Active Park Assist.....                              | 180 |
| Using Active Park Assist.....                        | 181 |
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....                    | 62  |
| Air Conditioning                                     |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                            | 101 |
| Alarm                                                |     |
| See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....                           | 60  |
| Anti-Theft Alarm.....                                | 60  |
| Alarm System.....                                    | 60  |
| Arming the Alarm.....                                | 61  |
| Disarming the Alarm.....                             | 61  |
| Full Guard and Reduced Guard.....                    | 61  |
| Triggering the Alarm.....                            | 60  |
| Appendices.....                                      | 346 |
| Apps.....                                            | 333 |
| Using Apps on an Android Device.....                 | 333 |
| Using Apps on an iOS Device.....                     | 333 |
| Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device.....    | 333 |
| At a Glance.....                                     | 16  |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators -                    |     |
| Automatic Transmission.....                          | 83  |
| Automatic Transmission Warning Chime.....            | 83  |
| Headlamps On Warning Chime.....                      | 83  |
| Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....                  | 83  |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators -                    |     |
| Manual Transmission.....                             | 83  |
| Headlamps On Warning Chime.....                      | 83  |
| Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....                  | 83  |
| Audio System.....                                    | 309 |
| Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays -                 |     |
| Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....                        | 312 |
| Adjusting the Clock.....                             | 312 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....              | 309 |
| Adjusting the Volume.....                            | 309 |
| Changing Radio Stations.....                         | 309 |
| Next Track Button.....                               | 309 |
| Pausing or Playing Media.....                        | 309 |
| Previous Track Button.....                           | 309 |
| Sound Settings.....                                  | 310 |
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....             | 309 |
| Switching the Screen On and Off.....                 | 310 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....           | 310 |
| Adjusting the Volume.....                            | 310 |
| Changing Radio Stations.....                         | 311 |
| Pausing or Playing Media.....                        | 311 |
| Returning to the Previous Screen.....                | 311 |
| Scrolling Through the Menu Options.....              | 310 |
| Seek Down and Previous Track Button.....             | 311 |
| Seek Up and Next Track Button.....                   | 311 |
| Selecting a Menu Option.....                         | 310 |
| Selecting Media.....                                 | 311 |
| Selecting the Radio.....                             | 311 |
| Sound Settings.....                                  | 311 |
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....             | 310 |
| System Settings.....                                 | 311 |
| Using a Cell Phone.....                              | 311 |
| Autolamps.....                                       | 67  |
| Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....            | 68  |
| Automatic Climate Control.....                       | 102 |
| Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents.....         | 103 |
| Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents..... | 103 |
| Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....       | 103 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....                  | 103 |
| Setting the Temperature.....                         | 103 |
| Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....                  | 102 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....            | 102 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....            | 102 |

# Index

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....        | 102 |
| Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....         | 102 |
| Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off.....        | 102 |
| Automatic Crash Notification System.....              | 35  |
| Automatic High Beam Control.....                      | 68  |
| About Automatic High Beam Control.....                | 69  |
| Automatic High Beam Control Information Messages..... | 70  |
| Automatic High Beam Indicator.....                    | 69  |
| Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....           | 69  |
| Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off.....  | 69  |
| Automatic Transmission.....                           | 165 |
| Brake Shift Interlock.....                            | 166 |
| Selector Lever Positions.....                         | 165 |
| SelectShift™.....                                     | 166 |
| Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission.....         | 142 |
| Information Messages.....                             | 144 |
| Principle of Operation.....                           | 142 |
| Replacing the Battery.....                            | 144 |
| Switching the System On and Off.....                  | 143 |
| Using Auto-Start-Stop.....                            | 143 |
| Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission.....            | 141 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Warning.....                          | 142 |
| Information Messages.....                             | 142 |
| Principle of Operation.....                           | 141 |
| Replacing the Battery.....                            | 142 |
| Switching the System On and Off.....                  | 141 |
| Using Auto-Start-Stop.....                            | 141 |
| Autowipers.....                                       | 63  |
| Settings.....                                         | 64  |
| Auxiliary Heater.....                                 | 106 |
| Parking Heater.....                                   | 107 |
| Principle of Operation.....                           | 106 |
| Using the Auxiliary Heater.....                       | 106 |
| Auxiliary Power Points.....                           | 123 |
| 12 Volt DC Power Point.....                           | 123 |
| 230 Volt AC Power Point.....                          | 123 |

## B

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Battery                                      |     |
| See: Changing the 12V Battery.....           | 257 |
| Blind Spot Information System.....           | 204 |
| .....                                        | 205 |
| Switching the System On and Off.....         | 206 |
| System Errors.....                           | 206 |
| Using the Blind Spot Information System..... | 205 |
| BLIS                                         |     |
| See: Blind Spot Information System.....      | 204 |
| Bonnet Lock                                  |     |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....       | 249 |
| Brake Fluid Check.....                       | 256 |
| Brakes.....                                  | 168 |
| General Information.....                     | 168 |
| Breaking-In.....                             | 234 |
| Brakes and Clutch.....                       | 234 |
| Tires.....                                   | 234 |
| Bulb Specification Chart.....                | 300 |

## C

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L    |     |
| EcoBoost™.....                          | 295 |
| Air Conditioning System.....            | 295 |
| Brake System.....                       | 297 |
| Engine.....                             | 296 |
| Fuel Tank.....                          | 297 |
| Washer Reservoir.....                   | 297 |
| Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L    |     |
| EcoBlue.....                            | 298 |
| Air Conditioning System.....            | 298 |
| Brake System.....                       | 300 |
| Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank..... | 299 |
| Engine.....                             | 299 |
| Fuel Tank.....                          | 299 |
| Washer Reservoir.....                   | 300 |
| Capacities and Specifications.....      | 290 |
| Cargo Nets.....                         | 221 |
| Installing the Net.....                 | 221 |
| Removing the Net.....                   | 223 |
| Catalytic Converter - Gasoline.....     | 153 |
| On-Board Diagnostics System.....        | 153 |
| Changing a Bulb.....                    | 260 |
| Cargo Area Lamp.....                    | 264 |
| Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.....    | 263 |

# Index

|                                                                       |     |                                                        |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Direction Indicator.....                                              | 261 | Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....     | 265 |
| Front Fog Lamps.....                                                  | 262 | Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....                 | 265 |
| Front Interior Lamp.....                                              | 263 | Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....                      | 266 |
| Front Interior LED Lamps.....                                         | 263 | Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....                   | 266 |
| Headlamp.....                                                         | 260 | Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....                 | 265 |
| Headlamp High Beam.....                                               | 261 | Cleaning the Underbody.....                            | 266 |
| Headlamp Low Beam.....                                                | 261 | Cleaning Wheels.....                                   | 265 |
| License Plate Lamp.....                                               | 263 | Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....                 | 265 |
| Reading Lamps.....                                                    | 264 | Cleaning the Interior.....                             | 266 |
| Rear Lamps.....                                                       | 262 | Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....                   | 267 |
| Side Direction Indicator.....                                         | 262 | Cleaning Displays and Screens.....                     | 267 |
| Side Lamp.....                                                        | 260 | Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners.....              | 267 |
| Changing a Fuse.....                                                  | 247 | Cleaning Leather and Vinyl.....                        | 267 |
| Fuse Types.....                                                       | 247 | Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....                          | 268 |
| General Information.....                                              | 247 | Cleaning Plastic.....                                  | 267 |
| Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....                                   | 247 | Cleaning Seatbelts.....                                | 268 |
| Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box.....                                      | 247 | Cleaning Storage Compartments.....                     | 268 |
| Changing a Road Wheel.....                                            | 275 | Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....                     | 266 |
| Installing a Road Wheel.....                                          | 279 | Clearing All MyKeys.....                               | 49  |
| Jacking and Lifting Points.....                                       | 276 | Climate.....                                           | 324 |
| Lowering the Spare Wheel.....                                         | 277 | Accessing Rear Climate Controls.....                   | 326 |
| Lug Nuts.....                                                         | 275 | Accessing the Climate Control Menu.....                | 324 |
| Removing a Road Wheel.....                                            | 278 | Directing the Airflow.....                             | 324 |
| Removing the Wheel Trim.....                                          | 278 | Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator.....               | 326 |
| Stowing the Flat Tire.....                                            | 279 | Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....                    | 325 |
| Vehicle Jack.....                                                     | 275 | Setting the Temperature.....                           | 325 |
| Vehicles with a Spare Wheel.....                                      | 275 | Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....                    | 325 |
| Changing the 12V Battery.....                                         | 257 | Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off.....               | 325 |
| Changing the Front Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate..... | 259 | Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off.....     | 326 |
| Changing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors..... | 258 | Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....              | 326 |
| Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....              | 308 | Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....               | 327 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....                         | 219 | Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....             | 326 |
| Checking MyKey System Status.....                                     | 50  | Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....         | 325 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades.....                                        | 257 | Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off..... | 325 |
| Child Restraint Positioning.....                                      | 23  | Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....          | 325 |
| Child Safety.....                                                     | 19  |                                                        |     |
| Child Safety Locks.....                                               | 27  |                                                        |     |
| Left-Hand Side.....                                                   | 27  |                                                        |     |
| Right-Hand Side.....                                                  | 27  |                                                        |     |
| Cigar Lighter.....                                                    | 124 |                                                        |     |
| Cleaning the Exterior.....                                            | 265 |                                                        |     |
| Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....                               | 266 |                                                        |     |

# Index

|                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off.....            | 325 |
| Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....                 | 326 |
| Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....                       | 326 |
| Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....              | 326 |
| Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....                  | 326 |
| Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....      | 327 |
| Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off.....                  | 327 |
| Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off.....              | 327 |
| Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....                   | 326 |
| Climate Control.....                                             | 101 |
| Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....                    | 257 |
| Cold Weather Precautions.....                                    | 234 |
| Connected Vehicle.....                                           | 304 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....                  | 304 |
| Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem.....               | 13  |
| Connected Vehicle Limitations.....                               | 304 |
| Connected Vehicle Requirements.....                              | 304 |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem.....  | 305 |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 306 |
| Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....   | 312 |
| Pairing a Device.....                                            | 312 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....                  | 304 |
| Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....                            | 304 |
| Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....                            | 304 |
| What Is the Modem.....                                           | 304 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....                   | 305 |
| Coolant Check                                                    |     |
| See: Engine Coolant Check.....                                   | 255 |
| Cornering Lamps.....                                             | 71  |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....         | 46  |
| MyKey Information Messages.....                                  | 47  |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....      | 46  |
| MyKey Information Messages.....                                  | 46  |
| Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....                            | 308 |
| Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot.....                    | 308 |
| Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password.....                 | 308 |
| Cross Traffic Alert.....                                         | 206 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Indicator.....                               | 208 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages.....                    | 209 |
| Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations.....                      | 208 |
| Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors.....                          | 208 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....                    | 208 |
| Using Cross Traffic Alert.....                                   | 206 |
| Cruise Control.....                                              | 190 |
| Principle of Operation.....                                      | 190 |
| Cruise control                                                   |     |
| See: Using Cruise Control.....                                   | 190 |
| Cup Holders.....                                                 | 126 |
| <b>D</b>                                                         |     |
| Data Privacy.....                                                | 11  |
| Services That Third Parties Provide.....                         | 11  |
| Services That We Provide.....                                    | 11  |
| Declaration of Conformity.....                                   | 373 |
| Device Holder.....                                               | 127 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter.....                                   | 159 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration.....            | 160 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Information Messages.....              | 164 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....               | 162 |
| On-Board Diagnostics System.....                                 | 160 |
| Direction Indicators.....                                        | 72  |
| Doors and Locks.....                                             | 53  |
| Driver Airbag.....                                               | 31  |
| Driver Alert.....                                                | 199 |
| Driver Alert System Display.....                                 | 200 |
| Driver Alert System Messages.....                                | 201 |

# Index

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Driver Alert System Warnings.....         | 200 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....    | 200 |
| Driving Aids.....                         | 197 |
| Driving Economically.....                 | 234 |
| Driving Hints.....                        | 234 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water.....        | 234 |
| <b>E</b>                                  |     |
| Eco.....                                  | 212 |
| Eco Mode.....                             | 212 |
| Efficient Drive Mode.....                 | 213 |
| EcoSelect.....                            | 144 |
| About EcoSelect.....                      | 144 |
| EcoSelect Indicator.....                  | 144 |
| Switching EcoSelect On and Off.....       | 144 |
| Electromagnetic Compatibility.....        | 346 |
| Emergency Assistance.....                 | 35  |
| Emergency Call System Data.....           | 14  |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information.....    | 219 |
| Enabling Remote Start.....                | 99  |
| End User License Agreement.....           | 349 |
| VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE         |     |
| AGREEMENT (EULA) .....                    | 349 |
| Engine Block Heater.....                  | 139 |
| Using the Engine Block Heater.....        | 140 |
| Engine Coolant Check.....                 | 255 |
| Adding Coolant.....                       | 256 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....          | 255 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....        | 255 |
| Engine Emission Control.....              | 153 |
| Engine Immobilizer.....                   |     |
| See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....       | 60  |
| Engine Oil Check.....                     | 254 |
| Adding Engine Oil.....                    | 254 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L.....           |     |
| EcoBoost™.....                            | 254 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBlue.....   | 254 |
| Entertainment.....                        | 322 |
| Playing Music From a USB or Media         |     |
| Player.....                               | 324 |
| Streaming Music From a Bluetooth          |     |
| Device.....                               | 323 |
| Using the Radio.....                      | 322 |
| Environment.....                          | 15  |
| Event Data.....                           | 12  |
| Exterior Mirrors.....                     | 76  |
| Adjusting the Mirrors.....                | 76  |
| Folding the Mirrors.....                  | 76  |
| <b>F</b>                                  |     |
| Fan.....                                  |     |
| See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....     | 255 |
| See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....   | 255 |
| Fastening the Seatbelts.....              | 28  |
| Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....     | 28  |
| First Aid Kit.....                        | 236 |
| Flat Tire.....                            |     |
| See: Changing a Road Wheel.....           | 275 |
| Flat Tire Inflation.....                  |     |
| See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....   | 269 |
| Floor Mats.....                           | 235 |
| Fog Lamps - Front.....                    |     |
| See: Front Fog Lamps.....                 | 70  |
| Fog Lamps - Rear.....                     |     |
| See: Rear Fog Lamps.....                  | 70  |
| Folding Bulkhead.....                     | 224 |
| Moving the Folding Bulkhead to the        |     |
| Forward Position.....                     | 224 |
| Folding Tray.....                         | 126 |
| Front Fog Lamps.....                      | 70  |
| Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....             | 70  |
| Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or       |     |
| Off.....                                  | 70  |
| Front Parking Aid.....                    | 176 |
| Front Parking Aid Information             |     |
| Messages.....                             | 178 |
| Object Distance Indicator.....            | 177 |
| Front Wiper Blades.....                   |     |
| See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades..... | 257 |
| Fuel and Refueling.....                   | 145 |
| Fuel Burning Heater.....                  |     |
| See: Auxiliary Heater.....                | 106 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L.....      |     |
| EcoBoost™.....                            | 302 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L.....      |     |
| EcoBlue.....                              | 303 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures.....             | 302 |
| European Directive 1999/94/EC.....        | 302 |
| Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions.....       | 302 |
| Fuel Consumption.....                     | 152 |
| Advertised Capacity.....                  | 152 |
| Fuel Economy.....                         | 152 |
| Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....          | 147 |

# Index

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Fuel Quality - Diesel.....                           | 147 |
| Long-Term Storage.....                               | 147 |
| Fuel Quality - E85.....                              | 145 |
| Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel<br>Vehicles..... | 145 |
| Long-Term Storage.....                               | 146 |
| Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....                         | 146 |
| Long-Term Storage.....                               | 147 |
| Fuel Shutoff.....                                    | 236 |
| Ignition Switch.....                                 | 236 |
| Keyless Starting.....                                | 236 |
| Fuse Box Locations.....                              | 241 |
| Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....                     | 241 |
| Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....                  | 241 |
| Trailer Tow Module.....                              | 241 |
| Fuses.....                                           | 241 |
| Fuse Specification Chart.....                        | 242 |
| Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....                     | 242 |
| Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....                  | 245 |
| Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box.....                     | 247 |

## G

|                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Gasoline Particulate Filter.....                                 | 158 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Information<br>Messages.....         | 159 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter<br>Regeneration.....                 | 158 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps<br>and Indicators..... | 159 |
| Gauges.....                                                      | 79  |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....                            | 80  |
| Fuel Gauge.....                                                  | 79  |
| Information Display.....                                         | 79  |
| Gearbox                                                          |     |
| See: Transmission.....                                           | 165 |
| General Information on Radio<br>Frequencies.....                 | 38  |
| Global Opening and Closing.....                                  | 75  |
| Global Closing.....                                              | 75  |
| Global Opening.....                                              | 75  |

## H

|                                                                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Handbrake                                                                                           |     |
| See: Parking Brake - Automatic<br>Transmission.....                                                 | 169 |
| See: Parking Brake - Manual<br>Transmission.....                                                    | 168 |
| Hazard Flashers.....                                                                                | 236 |
| Hazard Flasher Indicator.....                                                                       | 236 |
| Switching the Hazard Flashers On or<br>Off.....                                                     | 236 |
| Headlamp Exit Delay.....                                                                            | 68  |
| Headlamp Leveling.....                                                                              | 71  |
| Headrest                                                                                            |     |
| See: Head Restraints.....                                                                           | 110 |
| Head Restraints.....                                                                                | 110 |
| Adjusting the Head Restraints.....                                                                  | 110 |
| Removing the Head Restraints.....                                                                   | 111 |
| Heated Exterior Mirrors.....                                                                        | 106 |
| Heated Rear Window.....                                                                             | 105 |
| Heated Seats.....                                                                                   | 120 |
| Heated Windshield.....                                                                              | 105 |
| Heating                                                                                             |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                                                                           | 101 |
| Hill Start Assist.....                                                                              | 169 |
| Switching the System On and Off.....                                                                | 170 |
| Using Hill Start Assist.....                                                                        | 170 |
| Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate<br>- Vehicles With: Automatic<br>Temperature Control..... | 103 |
| Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of<br>Thin Ice.....                                            | 104 |
| Defogging the Side Windows in Cold<br>Weather.....                                                  | 104 |
| General Hints.....                                                                                  | 103 |
| Quickly Cooling the Interior.....                                                                   | 104 |
| Recommended Settings for Cooling.....                                                               | 104 |
| Recommended Settings for Heating.....                                                               | 104 |
| Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate<br>- Vehicles With: Manual Temperature<br>Control.....    | 104 |
| Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of<br>Thin Ice.....                                            | 105 |
| Defogging the Side Windows in Cold<br>Weather.....                                                  | 105 |
| General Hints.....                                                                                  | 104 |
| Quickly Cooling the Interior.....                                                                   | 105 |
| Quickly Heating the Interior.....                                                                   | 104 |



# Index

|                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Recommended Settings for Cooling.....                          | 105 |
| Recommended Settings for Heating.....                          | 104 |
| Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....                    | 168 |
| Hood Lock                                                      |     |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....                         | 249 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....              | 121 |
| <b>I</b>                                                       |     |
| Ignition Switch.....                                           | 128 |
| Starting the Engine.....                                       | 129 |
| Switching the Ignition Off.....                                | 128 |
| Switching the Ignition On.....                                 | 128 |
| Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode.....                  | 128 |
| Information Displays.....                                      | 84  |
| General Information.....                                       | 84  |
| Information Messages.....                                      | 86  |
| Active Park Assist.....                                        | 86  |
| Adaptive Cruise Control.....                                   | 87  |
| Alarm.....                                                     | 87  |
| Automatic High Beam Control.....                               | 88  |
| Auto-Start-Stop.....                                           | 88  |
| Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems.....    | 89  |
| Brake System.....                                              | 89  |
| Doors and Locks.....                                           | 90  |
| Driver Alert.....                                              | 90  |
| Engine.....                                                    | 90  |
| Fuel System.....                                               | 91  |
| Headlamps.....                                                 | 91  |
| Hill Start Assist.....                                         | 91  |
| Lane Keeping System.....                                       | 91  |
| Maintenance.....                                               | 92  |
| MyKey.....                                                     | 93  |
| Parking Aid.....                                               | 93  |
| Parking Brake.....                                             | 94  |
| Parking Heater.....                                            | 94  |
| Pre-Collision Assist.....                                      | 94  |
| Rear Window Lock.....                                          | 94  |
| Remote Control.....                                            | 94  |
| Seatbelt Reminder.....                                         | 95  |
| Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....                      | 95  |
| Stability Control.....                                         | 96  |
| Starting System.....                                           | 96  |
| Steering System.....                                           | 97  |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                           | 97  |
| Transmission.....                                              | 97  |
| Wireless Accessory Charging.....                               | 98  |
| Installing Child Restraints.....                               | 19  |
| Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg.....            | 22  |
| Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....              | 22  |
| Booster Seats.....                                             | 20  |
| Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....                | 20  |
| ISOFIX Anchor Points.....                                      | 21  |
| Top Tether Anchor Points.....                                  | 22  |
| Instrument Cluster.....                                        | 79  |
| Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....                                | 68  |
| Instrument Panel - LHD.....                                    | 16  |
| Instrument Panel - RHD.....                                    | 17  |
| Instrument Panel Storage Compartment.....                      | 127 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter.....                                 | 198 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance.....                       | 199 |
| Principle of Operation.....                                    | 198 |
| Switching from Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter..... | 199 |
| Using Intelligent Speed Limiter.....                           | 198 |
| Interior Lamps.....                                            | 72  |
| Courtesy Lamp.....                                             | 72  |
| Reading Lamps.....                                             | 73  |
| Interior Mirror - Vehicles With:                               |     |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....                              | 76  |
| Interior Mirror - Vehicles Without:                            |     |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....                              | 76  |
| Introduction.....                                              | 7   |
| <b>J</b>                                                       |     |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle.....                                 | 237 |
| Connecting the Jumper Cables.....                              | 237 |
| Jump Starting.....                                             | 238 |
| Preparing Your Vehicle.....                                    | 237 |
| Removing the Jumper Cables.....                                | 238 |
| <b>K</b>                                                       |     |
| Keyless Entry.....                                             | 56  |
| Disabled Keys.....                                             | 58  |
| General Information.....                                       | 56  |

# Index

|                                                         |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade..... | 58 |
| Locking Your Vehicle.....                               | 57 |
| Passive Key.....                                        | 57 |
| Unlocking Your Vehicle.....                             | 57 |
| Keys and Remote Controls.....                           | 38 |

## L

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Lane Keeping System.....                         | 201 |
| Lane Keeping System Display.....                 | 203 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators.....              | 203 |
| Lane Keeping System Messages.....                | 204 |
| Lane Keeping System Settings.....                | 202 |
| Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp.....            | 204 |
| Switching Lane Keeping System On and Off.....    | 202 |
| Liftgate.....                                    | 59  |
| Lighting Control.....                            | 66  |
| Headlamp Flasher.....                            | 67  |
| Headlamp High Beam.....                          | 67  |
| Home Safe Lighting.....                          | 67  |
| Lighting Control Positions.....                  | 66  |
| Parking Lamps.....                               | 66  |
| Lighting.....                                    | 66  |
| General Information.....                         | 66  |
| Load Carriers                                    |     |
| See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....           | 223 |
| Load Carrying.....                               | 220 |
| General Information.....                         | 220 |
| Local Hazard Information.....                    | 219 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions.....        | 219 |
| Locking and Unlocking.....                       | 53  |
| Automatic Re-Locking.....                        | 55  |
| Automatic Unlocking.....                         | 55  |
| Configurable Unlocking.....                      | 56  |
| Double Locking.....                              | 53  |
| Locking.....                                     | 53  |
| Locking and Unlocking Confirmation.....          | 53  |
| Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside..... | 54  |
| Locking the Doors Individually With the Key..... | 54  |
| One-Stage Unlocking.....                         | 55  |
| Opening the Double Rear Doors.....               | 54  |
| Opening the Sliding Door.....                    | 54  |

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Rear Emergency Exit.....        | 55  |
| Two-Stage Unlocking.....        | 55  |
| Unlocking.....                  | 53  |
| Luggage Anchor Points.....      | 220 |
| Lug Nuts                        |     |
| See: Changing a Road Wheel..... | 275 |
| Lug Nuts.....                   | 286 |
| Locking Lug Nuts.....           | 286 |
| Lug Nut Torque.....             | 286 |

## M

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance.....                                     | 249 |
| General Information.....                             | 249 |
| Manual Climate Control.....                          | 101 |
| Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents.....         | 101 |
| Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents..... | 101 |
| Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....       | 101 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....                  | 101 |
| Setting the Temperature.....                         | 102 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....            | 101 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....            | 101 |
| Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....       | 101 |
| Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....        | 101 |
| Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off.....       | 101 |
| Manual Liftgate.....                                 | 59  |
| Closing the Liftgate.....                            | 59  |
| Opening the Liftgate.....                            | 59  |
| Unlocking the Liftgate.....                          | 59  |
| Manual Seats.....                                    | 112 |
| Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....                    | 113 |
| Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....                     | 112 |
| Adjusting the Seat Height.....                       | 112 |
| Dual Passenger Seat.....                             | 114 |
| Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....            | 112 |
| Single Passenger Seat.....                           | 113 |
| Manual Transmission.....                             | 165 |
| General Information.....                             | 165 |
| Shifting Into Reverse Gear.....                      | 165 |

# Index

|                                                   |    |
|---------------------------------------------------|----|
| Message Center                                    |    |
| See: Information Displays.....                    | 84 |
| Mirrors                                           |    |
| See: Windows and Mirrors.....                     | 74 |
| Mobile Communications                             |    |
| Equipment.....                                    | 10 |
| Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With:               |    |
| SYNC 3.....                                       | 13 |
| MyKey Settings.....                               | 45 |
| Configurable Settings.....                        | 45 |
| Non-Configurable Settings.....                    | 45 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles                |    |
| With: Push Button Start.....                      | 51 |
| What is an admin key?.....                        | 51 |
| Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....              | 51 |
| Why can I not create a MyKey?.....                | 51 |
| Why can I not program a MyKey?.....               | 51 |
| Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?..... | 52 |
| Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....  | 52 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles                |    |
| Without: Push Button Start.....                   | 51 |
| What is an admin key?.....                        | 51 |
| Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....              | 51 |
| Why can I not create a MyKey?.....                | 51 |
| Why can I not program a MyKey?.....               | 51 |
| Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....  | 51 |
| MyKey™.....                                       | 45 |
| Principle of Operation.....                       | 45 |

## N

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Navigation.....                     | 329 |
| Changing the Format of the Map..... | 330 |
| Live Traffic.....                   | 332 |
| Navigation Map Updates.....         | 332 |
| Route Guidance.....                 | 330 |
| Setting a Destination.....          | 329 |
| Zoom.....                           | 330 |

## O

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Oil Check                         |     |
| See: Engine Oil Check.....        | 254 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 249 |
| Closing the Hood.....             | 250 |

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Opening the Hood.....              | 249 |
| Overhead Console.....              | 126 |
| Rear Door Storage Compartment..... | 126 |

## P

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Parking Aids.....                                               | 174 |
| Principle of Operation.....                                     | 174 |
| Parking Brake - Automatic                                       |     |
| Transmission.....                                               | 169 |
| Parking Brake - Manual                                          |     |
| Transmission.....                                               | 168 |
| Passenger Airbag.....                                           | 32  |
| Passive Anti-Theft System.....                                  | 60  |
| Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....                              | 60  |
| Coded Keys.....                                                 | 60  |
| Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....                           | 60  |
| Principle of Operation.....                                     | 60  |
| Passive Key Backup Position.....                                | 43  |
| Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles                          |     |
| With: Passenger Double Seat.....                                | 43  |
| PATS                                                            |     |
| See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....                             | 60  |
| Personalized Settings.....                                      | 86  |
| Measure Units.....                                              | 86  |
| Switching Chimes Off.....                                       | 86  |
| Phone.....                                                      | 327 |
| Android Auto.....                                               | 329 |
| Apple CarPlay.....                                              | 328 |
| Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....                 | 327 |
| Text Messaging.....                                             | 328 |
| Using Your Cell Phone.....                                      | 327 |
| Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3..... | 312 |
| Selecting the USB Device.....                                   | 312 |
| Supported Audio File Formats.....                               | 312 |
| Power Door Locks                                                |     |
| See: Locking and Unlocking.....                                 | 53  |
| Power Windows - Vehicles With:                                  |     |
| One-Touch Open Driver Window.....                               | 75  |
| One-Touch Open.....                                             | 75  |
| Power Windows - Vehicles With: Rear                             |     |
| Power Windows .....                                             | 74  |
| Bounce-Back.....                                                | 74  |
| One-Touch Close.....                                            | 74  |
| One-Touch Open.....                                             | 74  |
| Rear Window Lock.....                                           | 75  |

# Index

|                                            |     |                                             |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| Pre-Collision Assist.....                  | 213 | Rear Occupant Alert System                  |     |
| Distance Alert.....                        | 215 | Indicators.....                             | 122 |
| Distance Indication.....                   | 215 | Rear Occupant Alert System                  |     |
| Pre-Collision Assist Information           |     | Limitations.....                            | 121 |
| Messages.....                              | 217 | Rear Occupant Alert System                  |     |
| Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors.....   | 216 | Precautions.....                            | 121 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp.....     | 217 | Rear Occupant Alert System.....             | 121 |
| Programming a MyKey.....                   | 47  | Rear Parking Aid.....                       | 174 |
| Protecting the Environment.....            | 15  | Object Distance Indicator.....              | 175 |
| Puncture                                   |     | Rear Parking Aid Information                |     |
| See: Changing a Road Wheel.....            | 275 | Messages.....                               | 176 |
| Push Button Ignition Switch.....           | 129 | Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....        | 105 |
| Failure to Start - Vehicles with Manual    |     | Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed.....       | 105 |
| Transmission.....                          | 129 | Directing Air to the Footwell Air           |     |
| Fast Restart.....                          | 130 | Vents.....                                  | 105 |
| Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning.....   | 131 | Directing Air to the Overhead Air           |     |
| Starting System Information                |     | Vents.....                                  | 105 |
| Messages.....                              | 131 | Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents and |     |
| Starting The Engine - Vehicles with        |     | the Footwell Air Vents.....                 | 105 |
| Automatic Transmission.....                | 129 | Switching the Rear Passenger Climate        |     |
| Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Manual |     | Controls On and Off.....                    | 105 |
| Transmission.....                          | 129 | Rear Seats - Long Wheelbase.....            | 117 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is   |     | Second Row Seats.....                       | 117 |
| Moving - Vehicles with Automatic           |     | Third Row Seats.....                        | 118 |
| Transmission.....                          | 130 | Rear Seats - Short Wheelbase.....           | 116 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is   |     | Second Row Seats.....                       | 116 |
| Moving - Vehicles with Manual              |     | Rear Under Floor Storage.....               | 221 |
| Transmission.....                          | 130 | Adjustable Load Floor.....                  | 221 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is   |     | Passenger Compartment Floor.....            | 221 |
| Stationary - Vehicles with Automatic       |     | Rear View Camera.....                       | 187 |
| Transmission.....                          | 130 | Rear View Camera Delay.....                 | 189 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is   |     | Switching the Rear View Camera Off.....     | 189 |
| Stationary - Vehicles with Manual          |     | Switching the Rear View Camera On.....      | 188 |
| Transmission.....                          | 130 | Using the Display.....                      | 188 |
| Switching the Ignition On to Accessory     |     | Vehicles With Parking Aid.....              | 189 |
| Mode.....                                  | 129 | Rear View Camera                            |     |
| Vehicles with a Diesel Engine.....         | 129 | See: Rear View Camera.....                  | 187 |
|                                            |     | Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....          | 65  |
|                                            |     | Rear Window Washer.....                     | 65  |
|                                            |     | Rear Window Wiper.....                      | 65  |
|                                            |     | Rear Wiper Blades                           |     |
|                                            |     | See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -       |     |
|                                            |     | Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate.....         | 259 |
|                                            |     | See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -       |     |
|                                            |     | Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors.....        | 258 |
|                                            |     | Refueling.....                              | 149 |
|                                            |     | Refueling System Overview.....              | 149 |
|                                            |     | Refueling System Warning.....               | 151 |

## R

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| REACH.....                         | 9   |
| Rear Fog Lamps.....                | 70  |
| Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....       | 70  |
| Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or |     |
| Off.....                           | 70  |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Audible |     |
| Warnings.....                      | 122 |

# Index

|                                                                          |     |                                                                |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Refueling Your Vehicle.....                                              | 150 | Seats.....                                                     | 110 |
| Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry and Push Button Start..... | 38  | Security.....                                                  | 60  |
| Locating Your Vehicle.....                                               | 41  | Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....                      | 153 |
| Removable Key Blade.....                                                 | 38  | AdBlue® Consumption.....                                       | 156 |
| Replacing the Battery.....                                               | 39  | AdBlue® Guidelines.....                                        | 154 |
| Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....                          | 99  | Checking the AdBlue® Level.....                                | 156 |
| Remote Start Limitations.....                                            | 99  | Checking the AdBlue® Level Status.....                         | 156 |
| Remote Start.....                                                        | 99  | Filling the AdBlue® Tank.....                                  | 154 |
| Remote Start Settings.....                                               | 99  | Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container.....                | 155 |
| Climate Control Settings.....                                            | 99  | Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....        | 155 |
| Heated Seat Settings.....                                                | 100 | Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages..... | 157 |
| Setting the Remote Start Duration.....                                   | 100 | Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp.....         | 157 |
| Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....                                        | 268 | Service Data.....                                              | 12  |
| Replacement Parts                                                        |     | Settings Data.....                                             | 13  |
| Recommendation.....                                                      | 9   | Comfort and Convenience Data.....                              | 13  |
| Collision Repairs.....                                                   | 10  | Entertainment Data.....                                        | 13  |
| Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....                        | 10  | Settings.....                                                  | 334 |
| Warranty on Replacement Parts.....                                       | 10  | Ambient Lighting.....                                          | 334 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....                              | 43  | Android Auto.....                                              | 334 |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                           | 288 | Apple CarPlay.....                                             | 334 |
| Roadside Emergencies.....                                                | 236 | Audio.....                                                     | 334 |
| Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....                                        | 223 | Automatic Updates.....                                         | 334 |
| Maximum Load Weights.....                                                | 224 | Bluetooth.....                                                 | 334 |
| Running-In                                                               |     | Clock.....                                                     | 334 |
| See: Breaking-In.....                                                    | 234 | Display.....                                                   | 334 |
| Running Out of Fuel.....                                                 | 147 | Emergency Assistance.....                                      | 334 |
| Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....                          | 148 | FordPass.....                                                  | 334 |
| Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....                                   | 148 | General.....                                                   | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Mobile Apps.....                                               | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Navigation.....                                                | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Phone.....                                                     | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Seats.....                                                     | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Sound.....                                                     | 334 |
|                                                                          |     | Valet Mode.....                                                | 335 |
|                                                                          |     | Vehicle.....                                                   | 335 |
|                                                                          |     | Voice Control.....                                             | 335 |
|                                                                          |     | Wi-Fi.....                                                     | 335 |
| Safety Precautions.....                                                  | 145 | Side Airbags.....                                              | 33  |
| Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....                                          | 28  | Side Curtain Airbags.....                                      | 34  |
| Seatbelt Reminder.....                                                   | 29  | Side Sensing System.....                                       | 178 |
| Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning.....                                     | 29  | Object Distance Indicator.....                                 | 179 |
| Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....                                        | 29  | Sitting in the Correct Position.....                           | 110 |
| Seatbelt Status.....                                                     | 29  | Sliding Door.....                                              | 56  |
| Seatbelts.....                                                           | 28  |                                                                |     |

## S

# Index

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Snow Chains                              |     |
| See: Using Snow Chains.....              | 274 |
| Spare Wheel                              |     |
| See: Changing a Road Wheel.....          | 275 |
| Special Notices.....                     | 10  |
| Speed Control                            |     |
| See: Cruise Control.....                 | 190 |
| Speed Limiter.....                       | 197 |
| Principle of Operation.....              | 197 |
| Using the System.....                    | 197 |
| Speed Sign Recognition.....              | 211 |
| Principle of Operation.....              | 211 |
| Speed Sign Recognition System            |     |
| Display.....                             | 212 |
| Speed Sign Recognition System            |     |
| Messages.....                            | 212 |
| Using Speed Sign Recognition.....        | 211 |
| Stability Control.....                   | 172 |
| Principle of Operation.....              | 172 |
| Starter Switch                           |     |
| See: Ignition Switch.....                | 128 |
| Starting a Diesel Engine - Automatic     |     |
| Transmission.....                        | 135 |
| Engine Warning Lamps.....                | 136 |
| Failure to Start.....                    | 135 |
| Glow Plug Indicator.....                 | 136 |
| Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....      | 136 |
| Important Ventilating Information.....   | 136 |
| Starting System Information              |     |
| Messages.....                            | 137 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Moving.....                              | 136 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Stationary.....                          | 136 |
| Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....       | 135 |
| Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition     |     |
| Switch.....                              | 135 |
| Starting a Diesel Engine - Manual        |     |
| Transmission.....                        | 137 |
| Engine Warning Lamps.....                | 138 |
| Failure to Start.....                    | 137 |
| Glow Plug Indicator.....                 | 138 |
| Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....      | 138 |
| Important Ventilating Information.....   | 138 |
| Starting System Information              |     |
| Messages.....                            | 139 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Moving.....                              | 138 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Stationary.....                          | 138 |
| Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....       | 137 |
| Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition     |     |
| Switch.....                              | 137 |
| Starting a Gasoline Engine.....          | 132 |
| Automatic Engine Shutdown.....           | 133 |
| Engine Warning Lamps.....                | 134 |
| Failure to Start.....                    | 132 |
| Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....      | 134 |
| Important Ventilating Information.....   | 134 |
| Starting System Information              |     |
| Messages.....                            | 135 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Moving.....                              | 133 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is |     |
| Stationary.....                          | 133 |
| Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....       | 132 |
| Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition     |     |
| Switch.....                              | 132 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine.....    | 128 |
| General Information.....                 | 128 |
| Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:     |     |
| Push Button Start.....                   | 132 |
| Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....        | 132 |
| Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without:  |     |
| Push Button Start.....                   | 131 |
| Locking the Steering Wheel.....          | 131 |
| Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....        | 132 |
| Steering Wheel.....                      | 62  |
| Storage Compartments.....                | 126 |
| Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles     |     |
| Without: SYNC 3.....                     | 312 |
| Selecting a Source.....                  | 312 |
| Sun Shades.....                          | 77  |
| Bounce-Back.....                         | 77  |
| Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....   | 77  |
| Sun Shade Relearning.....                | 77  |
| Supplementary Restraints System.....     | 31  |
| Principle of Operation.....              | 31  |
| Switching Off the Engine.....            | 139 |
| Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....        | 139 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System     |     |
| On and Off.....                          | 121 |
| Semiannual Reminder.....                 | 121 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and    |     |
| Off.....                                 | 32  |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....  | 32  |

# Index

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....     | 32  |
| Symbols Glossary.....                      | 7   |
| SYNC™ 3.....                               | 314 |
| General Information.....                   | 314 |
| SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....               | 336 |
| Additional Information and Assistance..... | 345 |
| Apps.....                                  | 342 |
| Navigation.....                            | 341 |
| Phone.....                                 | 340 |
| Resetting the System.....                  | 345 |
| USB and Bluetooth Audio.....               | 337 |
| Voice Recognition.....                     | 336 |
| Wi-Fi Connectivity.....                    | 344 |

## T

|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Technical Specifications                                    |     |
| See: Capacities and Specifications.....                     | 290 |
| Tire Care.....                                              | 273 |
| Tire Inflation When Punctured                               |     |
| See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....                     | 269 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System                             |     |
| Limitations.....                                            | 287 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System                             |     |
| Precautions.....                                            | 287 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                        | 287 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....      | 288 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....      | 288 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages..... | 289 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....        | 288 |
| Tire Pressures.....                                         | 280 |
| Spare Wheel.....                                            | 281 |
| Tire Repair Kit                                             |     |
| See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....                     | 269 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....                          | 269 |
| After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....          | 273 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....                | 270 |
| Tires                                                       |     |
| See: Wheels and Tires.....                                  | 269 |
| Tow Ball.....                                               | 228 |
| Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....                             | 229 |

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....                                 | 228 |
| Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....                         | 230 |
| Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....                                    | 231 |
| Towbar Dimensions.....                                          | 293 |
| Towing a Trailer.....                                           | 227 |
| Towing Points.....                                              | 239 |
| Front Towing Point.....                                         | 239 |
| Rear Towing Point.....                                          | 239 |
| Towing Eye Location.....                                        | 239 |
| Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission..... | 232 |
| Emergency Towing.....                                           | 232 |
| Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....    | 231 |
| Towing.....                                                     | 227 |
| Traction Control.....                                           | 171 |
| Principle of Operation.....                                     | 171 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition.....                                   | 209 |
| Principle of Operation.....                                     | 209 |
| Setting the Speed Warning.....                                  | 210 |
| Switching Speed Warning On and Off.....                         | 210 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition System                                 |     |
| Display.....                                                    | 210 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition System                                 |     |
| Messages.....                                                   | 210 |
| Trailer Sway Control.....                                       | 228 |
| Transmission.....                                               | 165 |
| Trip Computer.....                                              | 86  |
| Average Fuel.....                                               | 86  |
| Digital Speedometer.....                                        | 86  |
| Distance to Empty.....                                          | 86  |
| Resetting the Trip Computer.....                                | 86  |
| Trip Odometer.....                                              | 86  |

## U

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Under Hood Overview - 1.0L                   |     |
| EcoBoost™.....                               | 251 |
| Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, LHD..... | 252 |
| Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, RHD..... | 253 |
| Under Seat Storage.....                      | 126 |
| Unique Driving Characteristics.....          | 141 |
| USB Port.....                                | 313 |
| Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....           | 191 |
| Automatic Cancellation.....                  | 194 |

# Index

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Blocked Sensor.....                            | 195 |
| Canceling the Set Speed.....                   | 193 |
| Changing the Set Speed.....                    | 193 |
| Detection Issues.....                          | 194 |
| Following a Vehicle.....                       | 192 |
| Hilly Condition Usage.....                     | 194 |
| Overriding the System.....                     | 193 |
| Resuming the Set Speed.....                    | 194 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....         | 192 |
| Setting the Gap Distance.....                  | 192 |
| Switching Adaptive Cruise Control<br>Off.....  | 194 |
| Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....      | 191 |
| Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....        | 196 |
| System Not Available.....                      | 195 |
| Using Cruise Control.....                      | 190 |
| Switching Cruise Control Off.....              | 190 |
| Switching Cruise Control On.....               | 190 |
| Using MyKey With Remote Start<br>Systems.....  | 51  |
| Using Snow Chains.....                         | 274 |
| Vehicles with Stability Control.....           | 275 |
| Using Stability Control.....                   | 173 |
| Using Traction Control.....                    | 171 |
| Switching Traction Control On or Off.....      | 171 |
| Traction Control Indicator.....                | 171 |
| Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....         | 171 |
| Using Voice Recognition.....                   | 313 |
| Apps.....                                      | 321 |
| Automatic Blower Motor Speed<br>Reduction..... | 322 |
| Entertainment.....                             | 317 |
| General.....                                   | 316 |
| Navigation.....                                | 320 |
| Phone.....                                     | 319 |
| Phone Voice Service.....                       | 313 |
| Voice Settings.....                            | 321 |
| Using Winter Tires.....                        | 274 |

## V

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Care.....                                     | 265 |
| Cleaning the Exterior.....                            | 265 |
| Cleaning the Interior.....                            | 266 |
| Vehicle Dimensions - Long Wheelbase<br>Com Kombi..... | 290 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                               | 290 |

|                                                                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Dimensions - Long Wheelbase<br>Double Cab in Van/Long Wheelbase<br>Van.....   | 290 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                                                               | 290 |
| Vehicle Dimensions - Long Wheelbase<br>Kombi.....                                     | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                                                               | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions - Short Wheelbase<br>Com Kombi.....                                | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                                                               | 291 |
| Vehicle Dimensions - Short Wheelbase<br>Double Cab in Van/Short Wheelbase<br>Van..... | 292 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                                                               | 292 |
| Vehicle Dimensions - Short Wheelbase<br>Kombi.....                                    | 292 |
| Vehicle Dimensions.....                                                               | 292 |
| Vehicle Identification Number.....                                                    | 295 |
| Vehicle Identification Plate.....                                                     | 294 |
| Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....                                                            | 308 |
| Ventilation<br>See: Climate Control.....                                              | 101 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures.....                                                       | 287 |
| VIN<br>See: Vehicle Identification Number.....                                        | 295 |

## W

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Warning Lamps and Indicators.....               | 80 |
| Airbag Warning Lamp.....                        | 80 |
| Anti-Lock Brake System Warning<br>Lamp.....     | 80 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicator.....                  | 80 |
| Battery Warning Lamp.....                       | 80 |
| Blind Spot Information System<br>Indicator..... | 80 |
| Brake System Warning Lamp.....                  | 81 |
| Cruise Control Indicator.....                   | 81 |
| Direction Indicator.....                        | 81 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Warning<br>Lamp..... | 81 |
| Engine Warning Lamps.....                       | 81 |
| Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....               | 81 |
| Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....                   | 81 |
| Frost Warning Lamp.....                         | 81 |
| Glow Plug Indicator.....                        | 82 |
| Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....               | 82 |
| Ignition Warning Lamp.....                      | 82 |



# Index

---

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Lamps on Indicator.....                                         | 82  |
| Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....                                | 82  |
| Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....                             | 82  |
| Message Center Indicator.....                                   | 82  |
| Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....                                  | 82  |
| Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....                                    | 82  |
| Shift Indicator.....                                            | 82  |
| Stability Control and Traction Control<br>Indicator.....        | 82  |
| Stability Control and Traction Control Off<br>Warning Lamp..... | 83  |
| Warning Triangle.....                                           | 236 |
| Washer Fluid Check.....                                         | 257 |
| Washers<br>See: Wipers and Washers.....                         | 63  |
| Waxing Your Vehicle.....                                        | 268 |
| What Is a Connected Vehicle.....                                | 304 |
| What Is Local Hazard Information.....                           | 219 |
| What Is Remote Start.....                                       | 99  |
| What is the Rear Occupant Alert<br>System.....                  | 121 |
| What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring<br>System.....             | 287 |
| Wheel Nuts<br>See: Changing a Road Wheel.....                   | 275 |
| Wheels and Tires.....                                           | 269 |
| General Information.....                                        | 269 |
| Windows and Mirrors.....                                        | 74  |
| Windshield Washers.....                                         | 65  |
| Windshield Wipers.....                                          | 63  |
| Intermittent Wipe.....                                          | 63  |
| Winter Tires<br>See: Using Winter Tires.....                    | 274 |
| Wiper Blades<br>See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....             | 257 |
| Wipers and Washers.....                                         | 63  |
| Wireless Accessory Charger.....                                 | 124 |





